Contents

1 How to Read this Design Guide

VLT HVAC Drive
FC 100 Series
Software version: 3.2.x

This guide can be used with all VLT HVAC Drive adjustable frequency drives with software version 3.2.x.
The current software version number can be read from par. 15-43 *Software Version*.

1.1.1 Copyright, limitation of liability and revision rights

1.1.2 Available literature for VLT HVAC Drive

- Instruction ManualMG.11.Ax.yy provides the necessary information for getting the adjustable frequency drivedrive up and running.
- Instruction Manual VLT HVAC Drive High Power, MG.11.Fx.yy
- Design Guide MG.11.Bx.yy contains all the technical information about the adjustable frequency drivedrive and customer design and applications.
- Programming Guide MG.11.Cx.yy provides information on how to program and includes complete parameter descriptions.
- Mounting Instruction, Analog I/O Option MCB109, MI.38.Bx.yy
- Application Note, Temperature Derating Guide, MN.11.Ax.yy
- PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10DCT 10, MG.10.Ax.yy enables the user to configure the adjustable frequency drivedrive from a Windows™ based PC environment.
- Danfoss VLT® Energy Box software at *www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions* www.geelectrical.com/driveswww.trane.com/vfd, then choose PC Software Download
- VLT® VLT HVAC Drive Drive Applications, MG.11.Tx.yy
- Instruction ManualVLT HVAC Drive Profibus, MG.33.Cx.yy.
- Instruction ManualVLT HVAC Drive Device Net, MG.33.Dx.yy
- Instruction Manual VLT HVAC Drive BACnet, MG.11.Dx.yy
- Instruction ManualVLT HVAC Drive LonWorks, MG.11.Ex.yy
- Instruction ManualVLT HVAC Drive Metasys, MG.11.Gx.yy
- Instruction Manual VLT HVAC Drive FLN, MG.11.Zx.yy
- Output Filter Design Guide, MG.90.Nx.yy
- Brake Resistor Design Guide, MG.90.Ox.yy

x = Revision number
yy = Language code

Danfoss technical literature is available in print from your local Danfoss Sales Office or online at:
www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Documentations/Technical+Documentation.htm

1.1.3 Approvals

1.1.4 Symbols

Symbols used in this guide.

NOTE!
Indicates something to be noted by the reader.

Indicates a general warning.

Indicates a high-voltage warning.

*	Indicates default setting

1.1.5 Abbreviations

Alternating current	AC
American wire gauge	AWG
Ampere/AMP	A
Automatic Motor Adaptation	AMA
Current limit	I_{LIM}
Degrees Celsius	°C
Direct current	DC
Drive Dependent	D-TYPE
Electro Magnetic Compatibility	EMC
Electronic Thermal Relay	ETR
Adjustable Frequency Drive	FC
Gram	g
Hertz	Hz
Kilohertz	kHz
Local Control Panel	LCP
Meter	m
Millihenry Inductance	mH
Milliampere	mA
Millisecond	ms
Minute	min
Motion Control Tool	MCT
Nanofarad	nF
Newton Meters	Nm
Nominal motor current	$I_{M,N}$
Nominal motor frequency	$f_{M,N}$
Nominal motor power	$P_{M,N}$
Nominal motor voltage	$U_{M,N}$
Parameter	par.
Protective Extra Low Voltage	PELV
Printed Circuit Board	PCB
Rated Inverter Output Current	I_{INV}
Revolutions Per Minute	RPM
Regenerative terminals	Regen
Second	s
Synchronous Motor Speed	n_s
Torque limit	T_{LIM}
Volt	V
The maximum output current	$I_{VLT,MAX}$
The rated output current supplied by the adjustable frequency drive	$I_{VLT,N}$

1

1.1.6 Definitions

Drive:

$I_{VLT,MAX}$
The maximum output current.

$I_{VLT,N}$
The rated output current supplied by the adjustable frequency drive.

$U_{VLT,MAX}$
The maximum output voltage.

Input:

Control command You can start and stop the connected motor by means of LCP and the digital inputs. Functions are divided into two groups. Functions in group 1 have higher priority than functions in group 2.	Group 1 Group 2	Reset, Coasting stop, Reset and Coasting stop, Quick-stop, DC braking, Stop and the "Off" key. Start, Pulse start, Reversing, Start reversing, Jog and Freeze output

Motor:

f_{JOG}
The motor frequency when the jog function is activated (via digital terminals).

f_M
The motor frequency.

f_{MAX}
The maximum motor frequency.

f_{MIN}
The minimum motor frequency.

$f_{M,N}$
The rated motor frequency (nameplate data).

I_M
The motor current.

$I_{M,N}$
The rated motor current (nameplate data).

$n_{M,N}$
The rated motor speed (nameplate data).

$P_{M,N}$
The rated motor power (nameplate data).

$T_{M,N}$

The rated torque (motor).

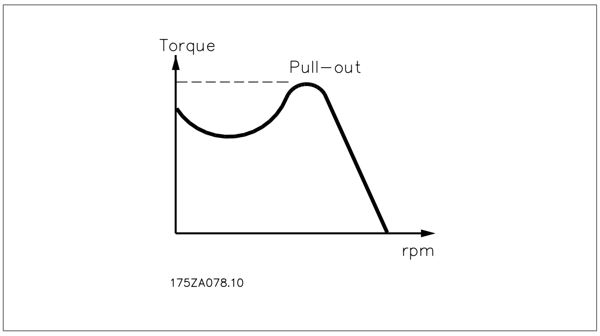
U_M

The instantaneous motor voltage.

$U_{M,N}$

The rated motor voltage (nameplate data).

Break-away torque



η_{VLT}

The efficiency of the adjustable frequency drive is defined as the ratio between the power output and the power input.

Start-disable command

A stop command belonging to the group 1 control commands - see this group.

Stop command

See Control commands.

References:

Analog Reference

A signal transmitted to the analog inputs 53 or 54, can be voltage or current.

Bus Reference

A signal transmitted to the serial communication port (FC port).

Preset Reference

A defined preset reference to be set from -100% to +100% of the reference range. Selection of eight preset references via the digital terminals.

Pulse Reference

A pulse frequency signal transmitted to the digital inputs (terminal 29 or 33).

Ref_{MAX}

Determines the relationship between the reference input at 100% full scale value (typically 10 V, 20mA) and the resulting reference. The maximum reference value set in par. 3-03 *Maximum Reference*.

Ref_{MIN}

Determines the relationship between the reference input at 0% value (typically 0 V, 0 mA, 4 mA) and the resulting reference. The minimum reference value set in par. 3-02 *Minimum Reference*

Miscellaneous:

Analog Inputs

The analog inputs are used for controlling various functions of the adjustable frequency drive.
There are two types of analog inputs:
Current input, 0–20 mA and 4–20 mA
Voltage input, 0–10 V DC.

Analog Outputs

The analog outputs can supply a signal of 0–20 mA, 4–20 mA, or a digital signal.

Automatic Motor Adaptation, AMA

AMA algorithm determines the electrical parameters for the connected motor at standstill.

Brake Resistor

The brake resistor is a module capable of absorbing the braking energy generated in regenerative braking. This regenerative braking energy increases the intermediate circuit voltage and a brake chopper ensures that the power is transmitted to the brake resistor.

CT Characteristics

Constant torque characteristics used for screw and scroll refrigeration compressors.

Digital Inputs

The digital inputs can be used for controlling various adjustable frequency drive functions.

Digital Outputs

The adjustable frequency drive features two solid state outputs that can supply a 24 V DC (max. 40 mA) signal.

DSP

Digital Signal Processor.

Relay Outputs:

The adjustable frequency drive features two programmable relay outputs.

ETR

Electronic Thermal Relay is a thermal load calculation based on present load and time. Its purpose is to estimate the motor temperature.

GLCP:

Graphical Local Control Panel (LCP102)

Initializing

If initialization is carried out (par. 14-22 *Operation Mode*), the programmable parameters of the adjustable frequency drive return to their default settings.

Intermittent Duty Cycle
An intermittent duty rating refers to a sequence of duty cycles. Each cycle consists of an on-load and an off-load period. The operation can be either periodic duty or non-periodic duty.

LCP
The Local Control Panel (LCP)keypad makes up a complete interface for control and programming of the adjustable frequency drive. The control panel-keypad is detachable and can be installed up to 10 ft [3 m] from the adjustable frequency drive, i.e., in a front panel by means of the installation kit option.
The Local Control Panel is available in two versions:

- Numerical LCP101 (NLCP)
- Graphical LCP102 (GLCP)

lsb
Least significant bit.

MCM
Short for Mille Circular Mil, an American measuring unit for cable cross-section. 1 MCM ≡ 0.00079 in^2 (0.5067 mm^2).

msb
Most significant bit.

NLCP
Numerical Local Control Panel LCP101

On-line/Off-line Parameters
Changes to on-line parameters are activated immediately after the data value is changed. Changes to off-line parameters are not activated until you enter [OK] on the LCP.

PID Controller
The PID controller maintains the desired speed, pressure, temperature, etc. by adjusting the output frequency to match the varying load.

RCD
Residual Current Device.

Set-up
You can save parameter settings in four set-ups. Change between the four parameter set-ups, and edit one set-up, while another set-up is active.

SFAVM
Switching pattern called Stator Flux-oriented Asynchronous Vector Modulation (par. 14-00 *Switching Pattern*).

Slip Compensation
The adjustable frequency drive compensates for the motor slip by giving the frequency a supplement that follows the measured motor load keeping the motor speed almost constant.

Smart Logic Control (SLC)
The SLC is a sequence of user defined actions executed when the associated user defined events are evaluated as true by the SLC.

Thermistor:
A temperature-dependent resistor placed where the temperature is to be monitored (adjustable frequency drive or motor).

Trip

A state entered in fault situations, e.g., if the adjustable frequency drive is subject to an overtemperature or when the adjustable frequency drive is protecting the motor, process or mechanism. Restart is prevented until the cause of the fault has disappeared and the trip state is cancelled by activating reset or, in some cases, by being programmed to reset automatically. Trip may not be used for personal safety.

Trip Locked

A state entered in fault situations when the adjustable frequency drive is protecting itself and requiring physical intervention, e.g., if the adjustable frequency drive is subject to a short circuit on the output. A locked trip can only be canceled by cutting off line power, removing the cause of the fault, and reconnecting the adjustable frequency drive. Restart is prevented until the trip state is cancelled by activating reset or, in some cases, by being programmed to reset automatically. The trip-lock function may not be used as a personal safety measure.

VT Characteristics

Variable torque characteristics used for pumps and fans.

VVC^{plus}

If compared with standard voltage/frequency ratio control, Voltage Vector Control (VVC^{plus}) improves the dynamics and the stability, both when the speed reference is changed and in relation to the load torque.

60° AVM

Switching pattern called 60°Asynchronous Vector Modulation (See par. 14-00 *Switching Pattern*).

1.1.7 Power Factor

The power factor is the relation between I_1 and I_{RMS}.

$$Power\ factor = \frac{\sqrt{3} \times U \times I_1 \times COS\varphi}{\sqrt{3} \times U \times I_{RMS}}$$

The power factor for 3-phase control:

$$= \frac{I_1 \times cos\varphi 1}{I_{RMS}} = \frac{I_1}{I_{RMS}}\ since\ cos\varphi 1 = 1$$

The power factor indicates to which extent the adjustable frequency drive imposes a load on the line power supply.

The lower the power factor, the higher the I_{RMS} for the same kW performance.

$$I_{RMS} = \sqrt{I_1^2 + I_5^2 + I_7^2 + .. + I_n^2}$$

In addition, a high power factor indicates that the different harmonic currents are low.

The built-in DC coils in the adjustable frequency drive produce a high power factor, which minimizes the imposed load on the line power supply.

2 Introduction to VLT HVAC Drive

2.1 Safety

2.1.1 Safety Note

The voltage of the adjustable frequency drive is dangerous whenever connected to line power. Incorrect installation of the motor, adjustable frequency drive or serial communication bus may cause death, serious personal injury or damage to the equipment. Consequently, the instructions in this manual, as well as national and local rules and safety regulations, must be complied with.

Safety Regulations

1. The adjustable frequency drive must be disconnected from line power if repair work is to be carried out. Make sure that the line power supply has been disconnected and that the necessary time has passed before removing motor and line power plugs.
2. The [STOP/RESET] key on the LCP of the adjustable frequency drive does not disconnect the equipment from line power and is thus not to be used as a safety switch.
3. Correct protective grounding of the equipment must be established, the user must be protected against supply voltage, and the motor must be protected against overload in accordance with applicable national and local regulations.
4. The ground leakage currents are higher than 3.5 mA.
5. Protection against motor overload is set by par. 1-90 *Motor Thermal Protection*. If this function is desired, set par. 1-90 *Motor Thermal Protection* to data value [ETR trip] (default value) or data value [ETR warning]. Note: The function is initialized at 1.16 x rated motor current and rated motor frequency. For the North American market: The ETR functions provide class 20 motor overload protection in accordance with NEC.
6. Do not remove the plugs for the motor and line power supply while the adjustable frequency drive is connected to line power. Make sure that the line power supply has been disconnected and that the necessary time has passed before removing motor and line power plugs.
7. Please note that the adjustable frequency drive has more voltage inputs than L1, L2 and L3, when load sharing (linking of DC intermediate circuit) and external 24 V DC have been installed. Make sure that all voltage inputs have been disconnected and that the necessary time has passed before commencing repair work.

Installation at high altitudes

Installation at high altitude:
380–500 V, enclosure A, B and C: At altitudes above 6,561 ft, please contact Danfoss regarding PELV.
380–500 V, enclosure D, E and F: At altitudes above 9,842 ft, please contact Danfoss regarding PELV.
525–690 V: At altitudes above 6,561 ft [2 km], please contact Danfoss regarding PELV.

Warning against Unintended Start

1. The motor can be brought to a stop by means of digital commands, bus commands, references or a local stop, while the adjustable frequency drive is connected to line power. If personal safety considerations make it necessary to ensure that no unintended start occurs, these stop functions are not sufficient.
2. While parameters are being changed, the motor may start. Consequently, the stop key [STOP/RESET] must always be activated, following which data can be modified.
3. A motor that has been stopped may start if faults occur in the electronics of the adjustable frequency drive, or if a temporary overload or a fault in the supply line power or the motor connection ceases.

Consequently, disconnect all electric power, including remote disconnects before servicing. Follow proper lockout/tagout procedures to ensure the power cannot be inadvertently energized. Failure to follow recommendations could result in death or serious injury.

Warning:
Touching the electrical parts may be fatal - even after the equipment has been disconnected from line power.

Also make sure that other voltage inputs have been disconnected, such as external 24 V DC, load sharing (linkage of DC intermediate circuit), as well as the motor connection for kinetic backup. Refer to the Instruction Manual for further safety guidelines.

The adjustable frequency drive DC link capacitors remain charged after power has been disconnected. To avoid an electrical shock hazard, disconnect the adjustable frequency drive from line power before carrying out maintenance. Wait at least as follows before doing service on the adjustable frequency drive:

Voltage (V)	Min. Waiting Time (Minutes)				
	4	15	20	30	40
200 - 240	1.5–5 hp [1.1–3.7 kW]	7.5–60 hp [5.5 –45 kW]			
380 - 480	1.5–10 hp [1.1–7.5 kW]	15–125 hp [11–90 kW]	150–350 hp [110–250 kW]		450–1350 hp [315–1000 kW]
525-600	1.5–10 hp [1.1–7.5 kW]	15–125 hp [11–90 kW]			
525-690		15–125 hp [11–90 kW]	60–550 hp [45–400 kW]	600–1875 hp [450–1400 kW]	

Be aware that there may be high voltage on the DC link even when the LEDs are turned off.

2.1.2 Disposal Instructions

Equipment containing electrical components may not be disposed of together with domestic waste.
It must be separately collected with electrical and electronic waste according to local and currently valid legislation.

2.2 CE labeling

2.2.1 CE Conformity and Labeling

What is CE Conformity and Labeling?
The purpose of CE labeling is to avoid technical trade obstacles within the EFTA and the EU. The EU has introduced the CE label as a simple way of showing whether a product complies with the relevant EU directives. The CE label says nothing about the specifications or quality of the product. Adjustable frequency drives are regulated by three EU directives:
The machinery directive (98/37/EEC)
All machines with critical moving parts are covered by the machinery directive of January 1, 1995. Since an adjustable frequency drive is largely electrical, it does not fall under the Machinery Directive. However, if an adjustable frequency drive is supplied for use in a machine, we provide information on its safety aspects in We do this by means of a manufacturer's declaration.
The low-voltage directive (73/23/EEC)
Adjustable frequency drives must be CE-labeled in accordance with the Low-voltage Directive of January 1, 1997. The directive applies to all electrical equipment and appliances used in the 50–1000 V AC and the 75–1500 V DC voltage ranges. Danfoss CE-labels in accordance with the directive and issues a declaration of conformity upon request.
The EMC directive (89/336/EEC)
EMC is short for electromagnetic compatibility. The presence of electromagnetic compatibility means that the mutual interference between different components/appliances does not affect the way the appliances work.
The EMC directive came into effect on January 1, 1996. Danfoss CE labels in accordance with the directive and issues a declaration of conformity upon request. To carry out EMC-correct installation, see the instructions in this Design Guide. In addition, we specify which standards our products comply with. We offer the filters presented in the specifications and provide other types of assistance to ensure the optimum EMC result.

The adjustable frequency drive is most often used by professionals of the trade as a complex component forming part of a larger appliance, system or installation. It must be noted that the responsibility for the final EMC properties of the appliance, system or installation rests with the installer.

2.2.2 What Is Covered

The EU "*Guidelines on the Application of Council Directive 89/336/EEC*" outline three typical situations of using an adjustable frequency drive. See below for EMC coverage and CE labeling.

1. The adjustable frequency drive is sold directly to the end-consumer. For example, it may be sold to a DIY market. The end-consumer is a layman. He installs the adjustable frequency drive himself for use with a hobby machine, a kitchen appliance, etc. For such applications, the adjustable frequency drive must be CE-labeled in accordance with the EMC directive.
2. The adjustable frequency drive is sold for installation in a plant. The plant is built up by professionals of the trade. It could be a production plant or a heating/ventilation plant designed and installed by professionals of the trade. Neither the adjustable frequency drive nor the finished plant must be CE-labeled under the EMC directive. However, the unit must comply with the basic EMC requirements of the directive. This is ensured by using components, appliances and systems that are CE-labeled under the EMC directive.
3. The adjustable frequency drive is sold as part of a complete system. The system is being marketed as complete and could, for example, be an air-conditioning system. The complete system must be CE-labeled in accordance with the EMC directive. The manufacturer can ensure CE-labeling under the EMC directive either by using CE-labeled components or by testing the EMC of the system. If he chooses to use only CE-labeled components, he does not have to test the entire system.

2.2.3 Danfoss Adjustable Frequency Drive and CE Labeling

CE labeling is a positive feature when used for its original purpose, i.e., to facilitate trade within the EU and EFTA.

However, CE labeling may cover many different specifications. Thus, you have to check what a given CE label specifically covers.

The covered specifications can be very different and a CE label may therefore give the installer a false feeling of security when using an adjustable frequency drive as a component in a system or an appliance.

Danfoss CE labels the adjustable frequency drives in accordance with the low-voltage directive. This means that if the adjustable frequency drive is installed correctly, we guarantee compliance with the low-voltage directive. Danfoss issuesWe issue a declaration of conformity that confirms our CE labeling in accordance with the low-voltage directive.

The CE label also applies to the EMC directive provided that the instructions for EMC-correct installation and filtering are followed. On this basis, a declaration of conformity in accordance with the EMC directive is issued.

The Design Guide offers detailed instructions for installation to ensure EMC-correct installation. Furthermore, Danfoss specifies which our different products comply with.

Danfoss provides other types of assistance that can help you obtain the best EMC result.

2.2.4 Compliance with EMC Directive 89/336/EEC

As mentioned, the adjustable frequency drive is mostly used by professionals of the trade as a complex component forming part of a larger appliance, system or installation. It must be noted that the responsibility for the final EMC properties of the appliance, system or installation rests with the installer. As an aid to the installer, Danfoss has prepared EMC installation guidelines for the Power Drive system. The standards and test levels stated for power drive systems are complied with, provided that the EMC-correct instructions for installation are followed; see the section *EMC Immunity*.

The adjustable frequency drive has been designed to meet the IEC/EN 60068-2-3 standard, EN 50178 pkt. 9.4.2.2 at 122°F [50°C].

2.4.1 Aggressive Environments

An adjustable frequency drive contains a large number of mechanical and electronic components. All are to some extent vulnerable to environmental effects.

> The adjustable frequency drive should not be installed in environments with airborne liquids, particles or gases capable of affecting and damaging the electronic components. Failure to take the necessary protective measures increases the risk of stoppages, thus reducing the life of the adjustable frequency drive.

Liquids can be carried through the air and condense in the adjustable frequency drive and may cause corrosion of components and metal parts. Steam, oil, and salt water may cause corrosion of components and metal parts. In such environments, use equipment with enclosure rating IP 54/55. As an extra protection, coated printed circuit boards can be ordered as an option.

Airborne particles such as dust may cause mechanical, electrical or thermal failure in the adjustable frequency drive. A typical indicator of excessive levels of airborne particles is the presence of dust particles around the adjustable frequency drive fan. In very dusty environments, use equipment with enclosure rating IP 54/55 or a cabinet for IP 00/IP 20/TYPE 1 equipment.

In environments with high temperatures and humidity, corrosive gases such as sulfur, nitrogen and chlorine compounds will cause chemical reactions on the adjustable frequency drive components.

Such chemical reactions will rapidly affect and damage the electronic components. In such environments, mount the equipment in a cabinet with fresh air ventilation, keeping aggressive gases away from the adjustable frequency drive.
An extra protection in such areas is a coating of the printed circuit boards, which can be ordered as an option.

> **NOTE!**
> Mounting adjustable frequency drives in aggressive environments increases the risk of stoppages and considerably reduces the life of the drive.

Before installing the adjustable frequency drive, check the ambient air for liquids, particles and gases. This is done by observing existing installations in this environment. Typical indicators of harmful airborne liquids are water or oil on metal parts, or corrosion of metal parts.

Excessive dust particle levels are often found on installation cabinets and existing electrical installations. One indicator of aggressive airborne gases is the blackening of copper rails and cable ends on existing installations.

D and E enclosures have a stainless steel back-channel option to provide additional protection in aggressive environments. Proper ventilation is still required for the internal components of the drive. Contact Danfoss for additional information.

2.5 Vibration and shock

The adjustable frequency drive has been tested according to the procedure based on the shown standards:

The adjustable frequency drive complies with requirements that exist for units mounted on the walls and floors of production premises, as well as in panels bolted to walls or floors.

IEC/EN 60068-2-6:	Vibration (sinusoidal) - 1970
IEC/EN 60068-2-64:	Vibration, broad-band random

2.6 Safe Stop

2.6.1 Electrical terminals

2

The adjustable frequency drive can perform the safety function *Safe Torque Off* (As defined by draft CD IEC 61800-5-2) or *Stop Category 0* (as defined in EN 60204-1).

It is designed and approved suitable for the requirements of Safety Category 3 in EN 954-1. This functionality is called Safe Stop. The information and instructions of the Instruction Manual are not sufficient for a correct and safe use of the Safe Stop functionality!

In order to install and use the safe stop function in accordance with the requirements of Safety Category 3 in EN 954-1, the related information and instructions in the relevant Design Guide must be followed! The information and instructions of the Instruction Manual are not sufficient for a correct and safe use of the safe stop functionality!

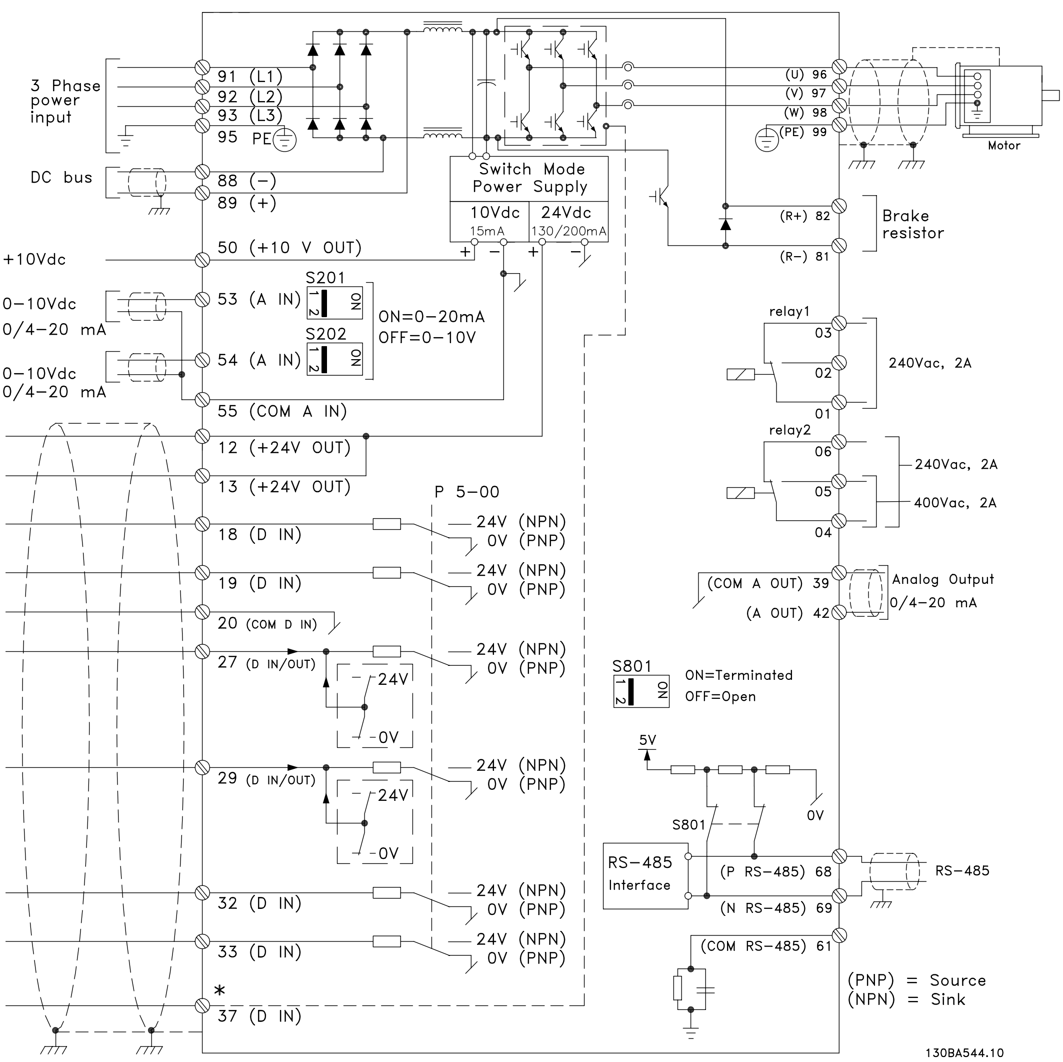


Figure 2.1: Diagram showing all electrical terminals. (Terminal 37 present for units with safe stop function only.)

Prüf- und Zertifizierungsstelle
im BG-PRÜFZERT

BGIA
Berufsgenossenschaftliches Institut für Arbeitsschutz

Hauptverband der gewerblichen Berufsgenossenschaften

Translation
In any case, the German original shall prevail.

Type Test Certificate

05 06004
No. of certificate

Name and address of the holder of the certificate: (customer)	Danfoss Drives A/S, Ulnaes 1 DK-6300 Graasten, Dänemark
Name and address of the manufacturer:	Danfoss Drives A/S, Ulnaes 1 DK-6300 Graasten, Dänemark

Ref. of customer:

Ref. of Test and Certification Body:
Apf/Köh VE-Nr. 2003 23220

Date of Issue:
13.04.2005

Product designation:	Frequency converter with integrated safety functions
Type:	VLT® Automation Drive FC 302
Intended purpose:	Implementation of safety function „Safe Stop"
Testing based on:	EN 954-1, 1997-03, DKE AK 226.03, 1998-06, EN ISO 13849-2; 2003-12, EN 61800-3, 2001-02, EN 61800-5-1, 2003-09,
Test certificate:	No.: 2003 23220 from 13.04.2005
Remarks:	The presented types of the frequency converter FC 302 meet the requirements laid down in the test bases. With correct wiring a category 3 according to DIN EN 954-1 is reached for the safety function.

The type tested complies with the provisions laid down in the directive 98/37/EC (Machinery).

Further conditions are laid down in the Rules of Procedure for Testing and Certification of April 2004.

130BA373.11

Head of certification body
(Prof. Dr. rer. nat. Dietmar Reinert)

Certification officer
(Dipl.-Ing. R. Apfeld)

PZB10E
01.05

Postal adress:
53754 Sankt Augustin

Office:
Alte Heerstraße 111
53757 Sankt Augustin

Phone: 0 22 41/2 31-02
Fax: 0 22 41/2 31-22 34

2

TÜV NORD

Certificate

TÜV NORD SysTec GmbH & Co. KG hereby certifies

Danfoss Drives A/S
Ulsnæs 1
DK-6300 Graasten
Denmark

for the realisation of the function "Safe Stop - STO"
in the Danfoss drives types
VLT® Automation Drive FC 302, VLT® Automation Drive FC 301 in the A1 housing
VLT® AQUA Drive FC 202, VLT® HVAC Drive FC 102

the compliance with the requirements listed in the following standards

- IEC 61800-5-2:2007; Designated Safety Function "Safe Torque Off - STO; SIL2 capability
- IEC 61508; Part 1:1998 + Corrigendum 1999
- EN 61508; Part 2:2000; SIL 2 capability for STO function
- EN ISO 13849-1:2006; PL d, EN 954-1:1996; Category 3
- IEC 62061:2005; SILCL 2

based on report No. SAS-163/2006C in the valid version.
This certificate entitles the holder to use the mark:

Expiry date: 2013-01-16
Certification No.: SAS1724/07, Vers. 1.0
Reference No.: M.IB5.03.122.01.SLA
86150 Augsburg
Augsburg, 2008-01-16

TÜV NORD SysTec GmbH & Co. KG
Branch South
Halderstraße 27
86150 Augsburg
Germany

Dr. Immanuel Höfer

130BB178.10

2.6.2 Safe Stop Installation

To carry out an installation of a Category 0 Stop (EN60204) in conformity with Safety Category 3 (EN954-1), follow these instructions:

1. The bridge (jumper) between Terminal 37 and 24 V DC must be removed. Cutting or breaking the jumper is not sufficient. Remove it entirely to avoid short-circuiting. See jumper on illustration.
2. Connect terminal 37 to 24 V DC by a short circuit-protected cable. The 24 V DC voltage supply must be interruptible by an EN954-1 category 3 circuit interrupt device. If the interrupt device and the adjustable frequency drive are placed in the same installation panel, you can use a non-shielded cable instead of a shielded one.

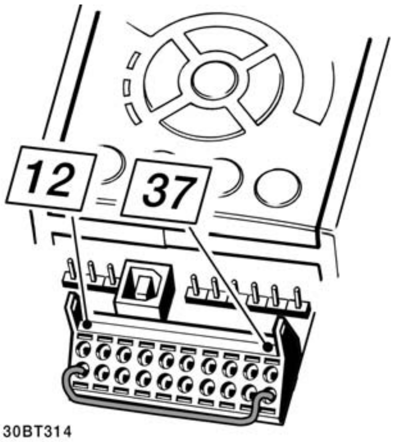


Figure 2.2: Bridge jumper between terminal 37 and 24 VDC

The illustration below shows a Stopping Category 0 (EN 60204-1) with safety Category 3 (EN 954-1). The circuit interruption is caused by an opening door contact. The illustration also shows how to connect a non-safety-related hardware coast.

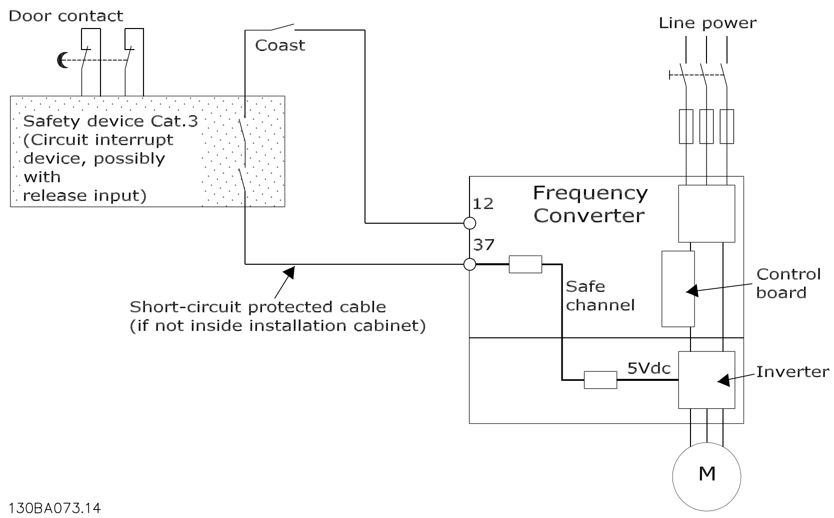


Figure 2.3: Illustration of the essential aspects of an installation to achieve a Stopping Category 0 (EN 60204-1) with safety Category 3 (EN 954-1).

2

2.7 Advantages

2.7.1 Why use an adjustable frequency drive for controlling fans and pumps?

An adjustable frequency drive takes advantage of the fact that centrifugal fans and pumps follow the laws of proportionality for such fans and pumps. For further information, see the text *The Laws of Proportionality, page 19*.

2.7.2 The Clear Advantage - Energy Savings

The very clear advantage of using an adjustable frequency drive for controlling the speed of fans or pumps lies in the electricity savings.
Compared to alternative control systems and technologies, an adjustable frequency drive is the optimum energy control system for controlling fan and pump systems.

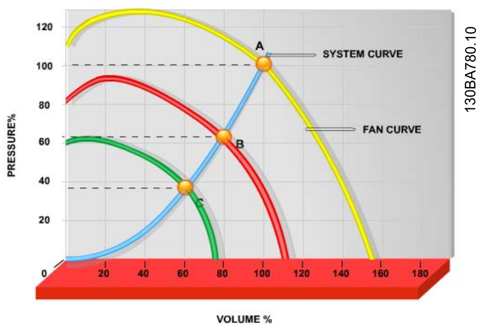


Figure 2.4: The graph is showing fan curves (A, B and C) for reduced fan volumes.

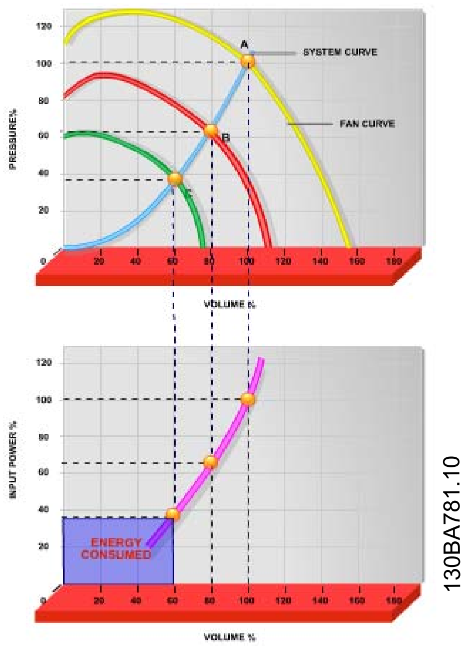


Figure 2.5: When using a adjustable frequency drive to reduce fan capacity to 60%, more than 50% energy savings may be obtained in typical applications.

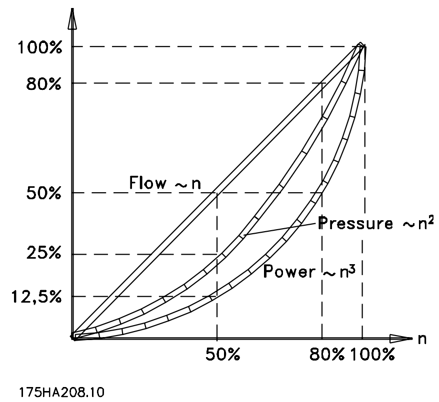
2.7.3 Example of Energy Savings

As can be seen from the figure (the laws of proportionality), the flow is controlled by changing the RPM. By reducing the rated speed by only 20%, the flow is also reduced by 20%. This is because the flow is directly proportional to the RPM. The consumption of electricity, however, is reduced by 50%. If the system in question only needs to be able to supply a flow corresponding to 100% a few days each year, while the average is below 80% of the rated flow for the remainder of the year, the amount of energy saved is even greater than 50%.

Thelaws of proportionality

The figure below describes the dependence of flow, pressure and power consumption on RPM.

Q = Flow	P = Power
Q_1 = Rated flow	P_1 = Rated power
Q_2 = Reduced flow	P_2 = Reduced power
H = Pressure	n = Speed regulation
H_1 = Rated pressure	n_1 = Rated speed
H_2 = Reduced pressure	n_2 = Reduced speed



$$Flow : \frac{Q_1}{Q_2} = \frac{n_1}{n_2}$$

$$Pressure : \frac{H_1}{H_2} = \left(\frac{n_1}{n_2}\right)^2$$

$$Power : \frac{P_1}{P_2} = \left(\frac{n_1}{n_2}\right)^3$$

2.7.4 Comparison of Energy Savings

The Danfoss adjustable frequency drive solution offers major savings compared with traditional energy saving solutions. This is because the adjustable frequency drive is able to control fan speed according to thermal load on the system and the fact that the adjustable frequency drive has a built-in facility that enables the adjustable frequency drive to function as a Building Management System, BMS.

The graph (Figure 2.7) illustrates typical energy savings obtainable with 3 well-known solutions when fan volume is reduced to, e.g., 60%.
As the graph shows, more than 50% energy savings can be achieved in typical applications.

2

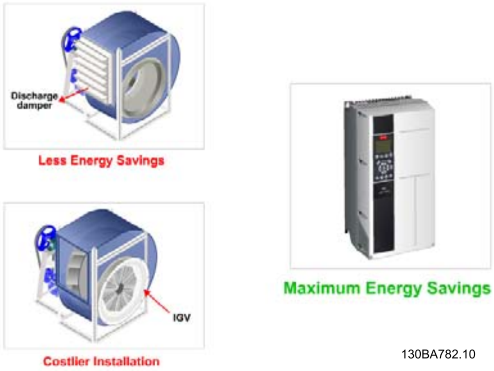


Figure 2.6: The three common energy saving systems.

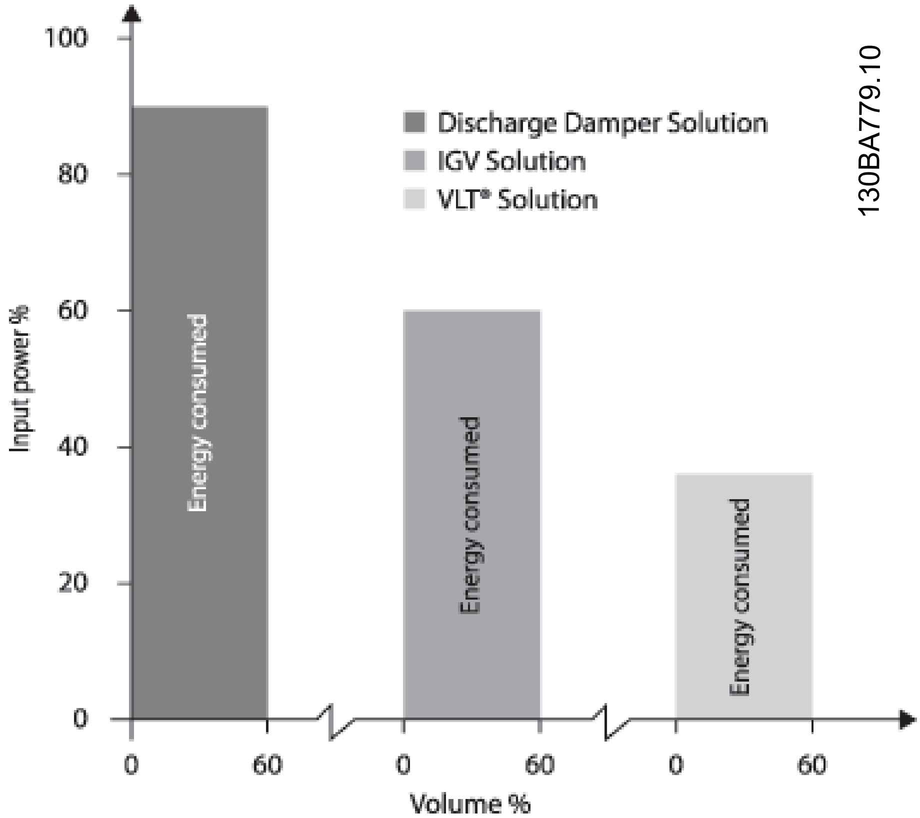


Figure 2.7: Discharge dampers reduce power consumption somewhat. Inlet guide vans offer a 40% reduction but are expensive to install. The Danfossadjustable frequency drive solution reduces energy consumption with more than 50% and is easy to install.

2.7.5 Example with Varying Flow over 1 Year

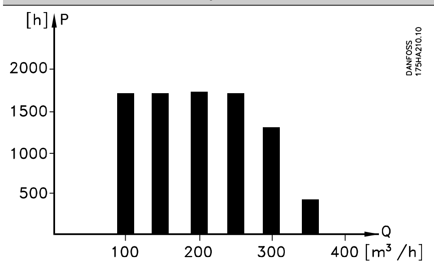
The example below is calculated on the basis of pump characteristics obtained from a pump datasheet.

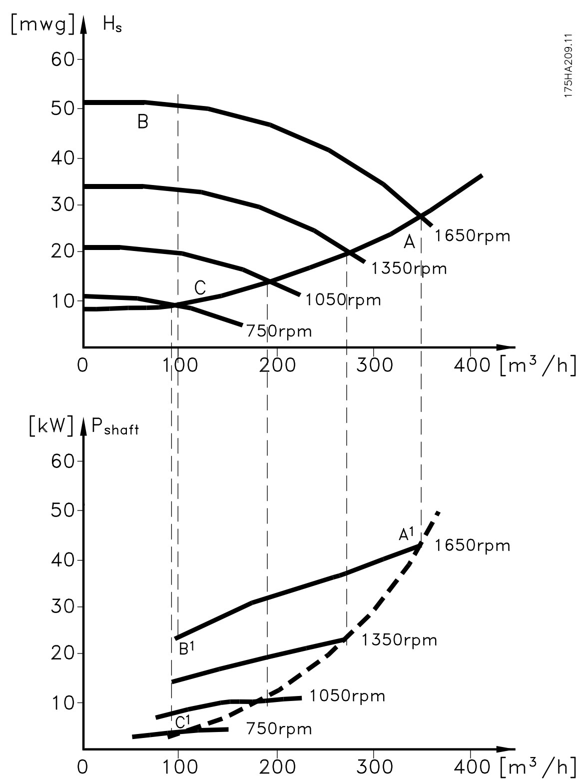
The result obtained shows energy savings in excess of 50% at the given flow distribution over a year. The pay back period depends on the price per kWh and price of the adjustable frequency drive. In this example, it is less than a year when compared with valves and constant speed.

Energy savings

$P_{shaft} = P_{shaft\ output}$

Flow distribution over 1 year





m^3/h	Distribution		Valve regulation		Adjustable frequency drive control	
	%	Hours	Power	Consumption	Power	Consumption
			A_1 - B_1	kWh	A_1 - C_1	kWh
350	5	438	42.5	18.615	42.5	18.615
300	15	1314	38.5	50.589	29.0	38.106
250	20	1752	35.0	61.320	18.5	32.412
200	20	1752	31.5	55.188	11.5	20.148
150	20	1752	28.0	49.056	6.5	11.388
100	20	1752	23.0	40.296	3.5	6.132
Σ	100	8760		275.064		26.801

2.7.6 Better Control

If an adjustable frequency drive is used for controlling the flow or pressure of a system, improved control is obtained.
An adjustable frequency drive can vary the speed of the fan or pump, thereby obtaining variable control of flow and pressure.
Furthermore, an adjustable frequency drive can quickly adapt the speed of the fan or pump to new flow or pressure conditions in the system.
Simple control of process (flow, level or pressure) utilizing the built-in PID control.

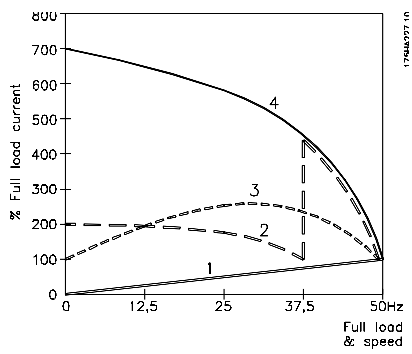
2.7.7 Cos φ Compensation

Generally speaking, the AKD102 have a cos φ of 1 and provides power factor correction for the cos φ of the motor, which means that there is no need to make allowance for the cos φ of the motor when sizing the power factor correction unit.

2.7.8 Star/Delta Starter or Soft-starter not Required

When larger motors are started, it is necessary in many countries to use equipment that limits the start-up current. In more traditional systems, a star/ delta starter or soft-starter is widely used. Such motor starters are not required if an adjustable frequency drive is used.

As illustrated in the figure below, an adjustable frequency drive does not consume more than rated current.



1 = VLT HVAC Drive	
2 = Star/delta starter	
3 = Soft-starter	
4 = Start directly on line power	

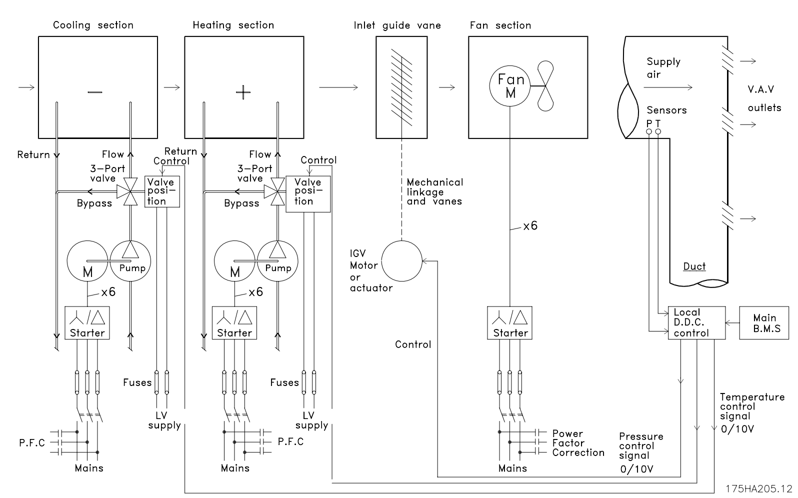
2.7.9 Using an Adjustable Frequency Drive Saves Money

The example on the following page shows that a lot of extra equipment is not required when an adjustable frequency drive is used. It is possible to calculate the cost of installing the two different systems. In the example, the two systems can be established at roughly the same price.

2.7.10 Without an Adjustable Frequency Drive

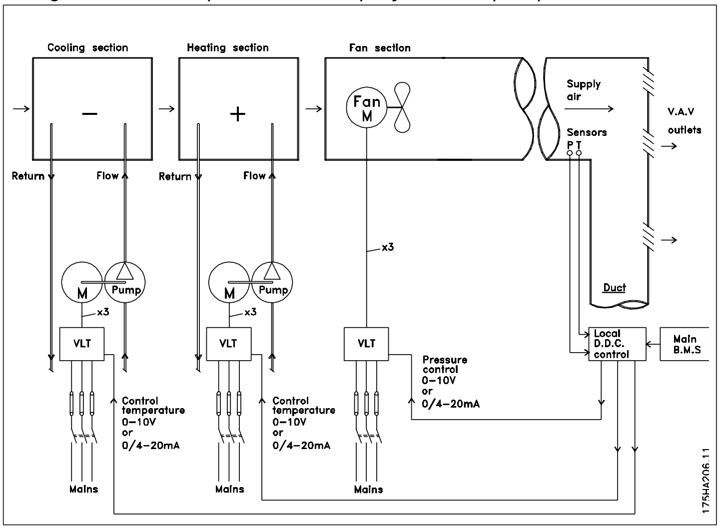
The figure shows a fan system made in the traditional way.

D.D.C.	=	Direct Digital Control	E.M.S.	=	Energy Management system
V.A.V.	=	Variable Air Volume			
Sensor P	=	Pressure	Sensor T	=	Temperature



2.7.11 With an Adjustable Frequency Drive

The figure shows a fan system controlled by adjustable frequency drives.



2.7.12 Application Examples

The next few pages give typical examples of applications within HVAC.
If you would like to receive further information about a given application, please ask your Danfoss supplier for an information sheet that gives a full description of the application.

Variable Air Volume

Ask for The Drive to...Improving Variable Air Volume Ventilation Systems MN.60.A1.02

Constant Air Volume

Ask for The Drive to...Improving Constant Air Volume Ventilation Systems MN.60.B1.02

Cooling Tower Fan

Ask for The Drive to...Improving fan control on cooling towers MN.60.C1.02

Condenser pumps

Ask for The Drive to...Improving condenser water pumping systems MN.60.F1.02

Primary pumps

Ask for The Drive to...Improve your primary pumping in primay/secondary pumping systems MN.60.D1.02

Secondary pumps

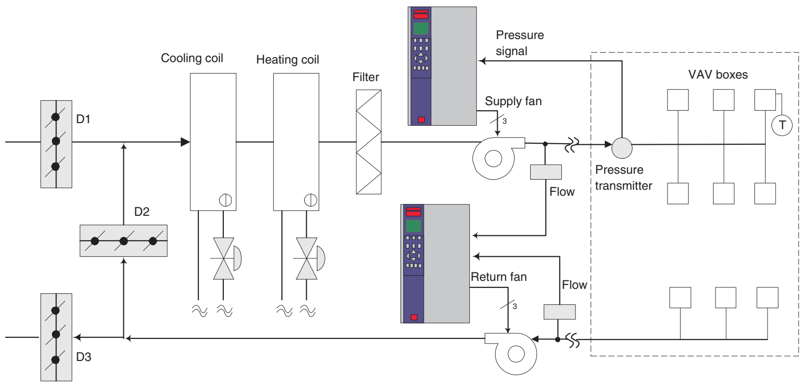
Ask for The Drive to...Improve your secondary pumping in primay/secondary pumping systems MN.60.E1.02

2.7.13 Variable Air Volume

VAV or Variable Air Volume systems, are used to control both the ventilation and temperature to satisfy the requirements of a building. Central VAV systems are considered to be the most energy efficient method to air condition buildings. By designing central systems instead of distributed systems, a greater efficiency can be obtained.
The efficiency comes from utilizing larger fans and larger chillers which have much higher efficiencies than small motors and distributed air-cooled chillers. Savings are also a result of decreased maintenance requirements.

2.7.14 The VLT Solution

While dampers and IGVs work to maintain a constant pressure in the ductwork, an adjustable frequency drive solution saves much more energy and reduces the complexity of the installation. Instead of creating an artificial pressure drop or causing a decrease in fan efficiency, the adjustable frequency drive decreases the speed of the fan to provide the flow and pressure required by the system.
Centrifugal devices such as fans behave according to the centrifugal laws. This means the fans decrease the pressure and flow they produce as their speed is reduced. Their power consumption is thereby significantly reduced.
The return fan is frequently controlled to maintain a fixed difference in airflow between the supply and return. The advanced PID controller of the HVAC adjustable frequency drive can be used to eliminate the need for additional controllers.



2

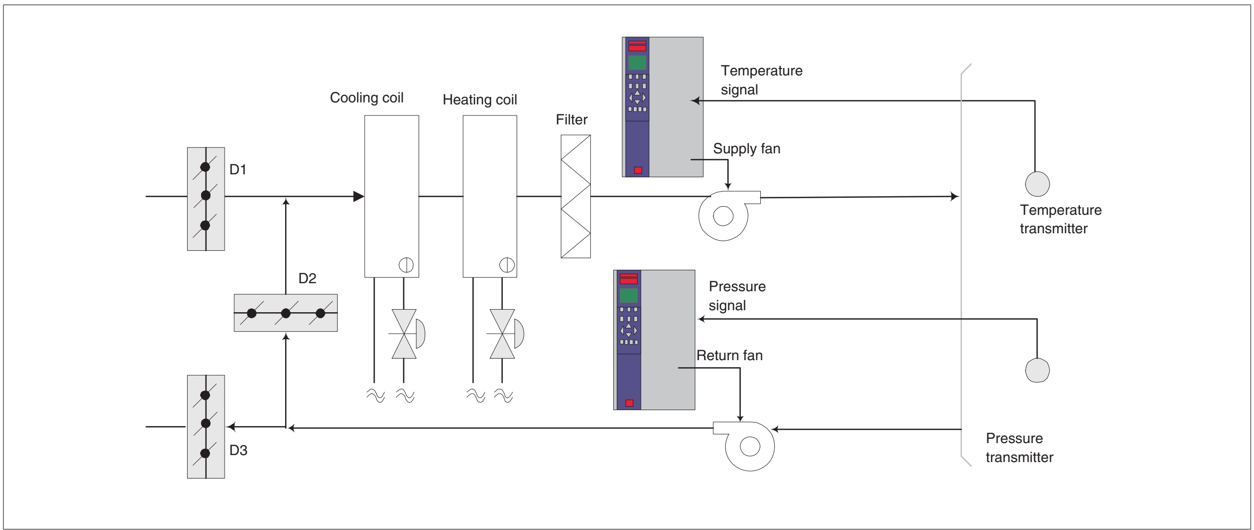
2.7.15 Constant Air Volume

CAV, or Constant Air Volume systems, are central ventilation systems usually used to supply large common zones with the minimum amounts of fresh tempered air. They preceded VAV systems and therefore are found in older, multi-zoned commercial buildings as well. These systems preheat amounts of fresh air utilizing Air Handling Units (AHUs) with a heating coil, and many are also used to air condition buildings and have a cooling coil. Fan coil units are frequently used to assist in the heating and cooling requirements in the individual zones.

2.7.16 The VLT Solution

With an adjustable frequency drive, significant energy savings can be obtained while maintaining decent control of the building. Temperature sensors or CO_2 sensors can be used as feedback signals to adjustable frequency drives. Whether controlling temperature, air quality, or both, a CAV system can be controlled to operate based on actual building conditions. As the number of people in the controlled area decreases, the need for fresh air decreases. The CO_2 sensor detects lower levels and decreases the supply fans speed. The return fan modulates to maintain a static pressure setpoint or fixed difference between the supply and return air flows.

With temperature control (especially used in air conditioning systems), as the outside temperature varies and the number of people in the controlled zone changes, different cooling requirements arise. As the temperature decreases below the setpoint, the supply fan can decrease its speed. The return fan modulates to maintain a static pressure setpoint. By decreasing the air flow, energy used to heat or cool the fresh air is also reduced, adding further savings.
Several features of the Danfoss HVAC dedicated adjustable frequency drive can be utilized to improve the performance of your CAV system. One concern of controlling a ventilation system is poor air quality. The programmable minimum frequency can be set to maintain a minimum amount of supply air, regardless of the feedback or reference signal. The adjustable frequency drive also includes a 3-zone, 3-setpoint PID controller which allows monitoring of both temperature and air quality. Even if the temperature requirement is satisfied, the adjustable frequency drive will maintain enough supply air to satisfy the air quality sensor. The controller is capable of monitoring and comparing two feedback signals to control the return fan by maintaining a fixed differential air flow between the supply and return ducts as well.



2.7.17 Cooling Tower Fan

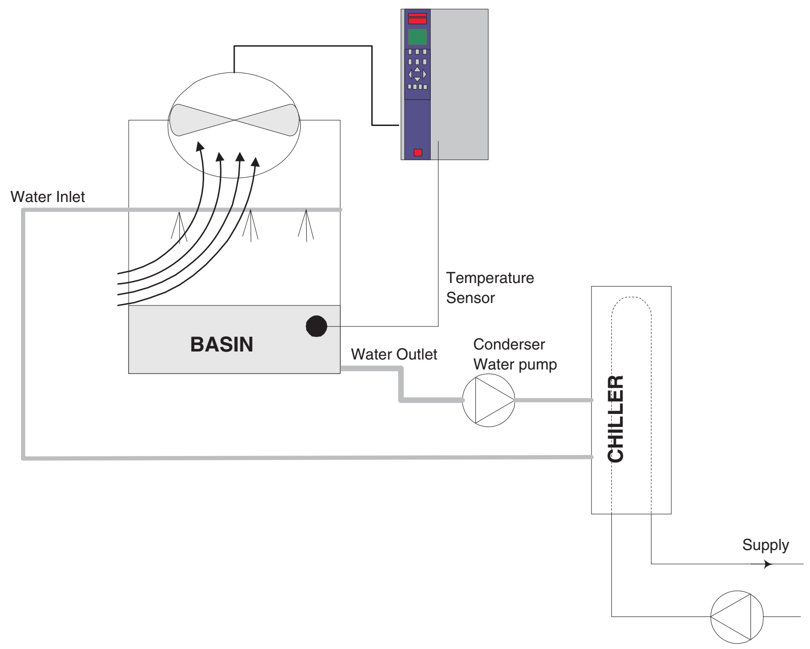
Cooling tower fans are used to cool condenser water in water-cooled chiller systems. Water-cooled chillers provide the most efficient means of creating chilled water. They are as much as 20% more efficient than air-cooled chillers. Depending on climate, cooling towers are often the most energy efficient method of cooling the condenser water from chillers.
They cool the condenser water by evaporation.
The condenser water is sprayed into the cooling tower, onto the cooling tower's "fill" to increase its surface area. The tower fan blows air through the fill and sprayed water to aid in the evaporation. Evaporation removes energy from the water, thus dropping its temperature. The cooled water collects in the cooling towers basin, where it is pumped back into the chiller's condenser, and the cycle is then repeated.

2.7.18 The VLT Solution

With an adjustable frequency drive, the cooling towers fans can be set to the speed required to maintain the condenser water temperature. The adjustable frequency drives can also be used to turn the fan on and off as needed.

Several features of the Danfoss HVAC dedicated adjustable frequency drive, the HVAC adjustable frequency drive can be utilized to improve the performance of your cooling tower fans application. As the cooling tower fans drop below a certain speed, the effect the fan has on cooling the water becomes insignificant. Also, when utilizing a gear-box to frequency control the tower fan, a minimum speed of 40-50% may be required.
The customer programmable minimum frequency setting is available to maintain this minimum frequency even as the feedback or speed reference calls for lower speeds.

Another standard feature is the "sleep" mode, which allows the user to program the adjustable frequency drive to stop the fan until a higher speed is required. Additionally, some cooling tower fans have undesireable frequencies that may cause vibrations. These frequencies can easily be avoided by programming the bypass frequency ranges in the adjustable frequency drive.



2

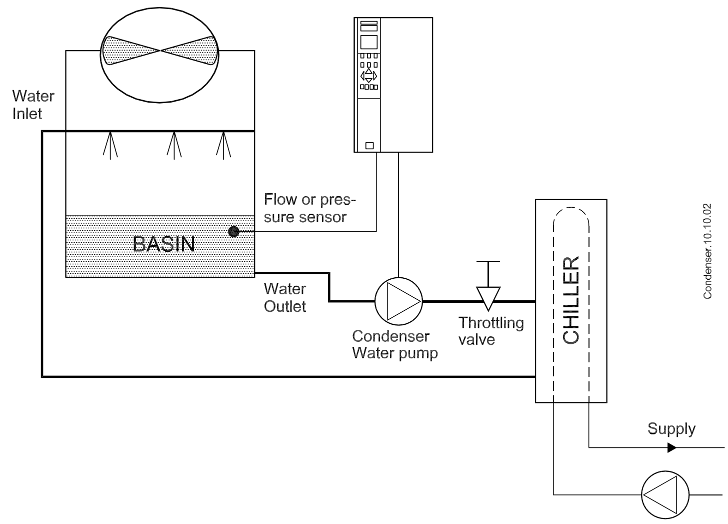
2.7.19 Condenser Pumps

Condenser water pumps are primarily used to circulate water through the condenser section of water cooled chillers and their associated cooling tower. The condenser water absorbs the heat from the chiller's condenser section and releases it into the atmosphere in the cooling tower. These systems are used to provide the most efficient means of creating chilled water, and they are as much as 20% more efficient than air cooled chillers.

2.7.20 The VLT Solution

Adjustable frequency drives can be added to condenser water pumps instead of balancing the pumps with a throttling valve or trimming the pump impeller.

Using an adjustable frequency drive instead of a throttling valve simply saves the energy that would have been absorbed by the valve. This can amount to savings of 15-20% or more. Trimming the pump impeller is irreversible, thus if the conditions change and higher flow is required the impeller must be replaced.



2.7.21 Primary Pumps

Primary pumps in a primary/secondary pumping system can be used to maintain a constant flow through devices that encounter operation or control difficulties when exposed to variable flow. The primary/ secondary pumping technique decouples the "primary" production loop from the "secondary" distribution loop. This allows devices such as chillers to obtain constant design flow and operate properly while allowing the rest of the system to vary in flow.

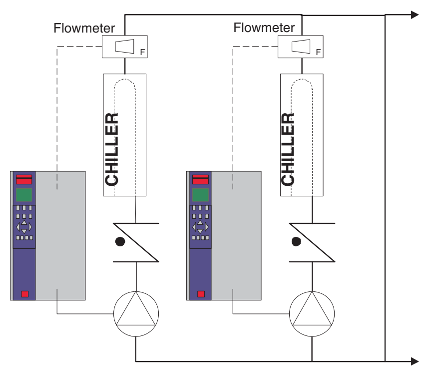
As the evaporator flow rate decreases in a chiller, the chilled water begins to become over-chilled. As this happens, the chiller attempts to decrease its cooling capacity. If the flow rate drops far enough, or too quickly, the chiller cannot shed its load sufficiently and the chiller's low evaporator temperature safety trips the chiller, requiring a manual reset. This situation is common in large installations, especially when two or more chillers are installed in parallel and primary/secondary pumping is not utilized.

2.7.22 The VLT Solution

Depending on the size of the system and the size of the primary loop, the energy consumption of the primary loop can become substantial.
An adjustable frequency drive can be added to the primary system to replace the throttling valve and/or trimming of the impellers, leading to reduced operating expenses. Two control methods are common:

The first method uses a flow meter. Because the desired flow rate is known and constant, a flow meter installed at the discharge of each chiller can be used to control the pump directly. Using the built-in PID controller, the adjustable frequency drive will always maintain the appropriate flow rate, even compensating for the changing resistance in the primary piping loop as chillers and their pumps are staged on and off.

The other method is local speed determination. The operator simply decreases the output frequency until the design flow rate is achieved.
Using a adjustable frequency drive to decrease the pump speed is very similar to trimming the pump impeller, except it doesn't require any labor and the pump efficiency remains higher. The balancing contractor simply decreases the speed of the pump until the proper flow rate is achieved and leaves the speed fixed. The pump will operate at this speed any time the chiller is staged on. Because the primary loop doesn't have control valves or other devices that can cause the system curve to change, and because the variance due to staging pumps and chillers on and off is usually small, this fixed speed will remain appropriate. In the event the flow rate needs to be increased later in the systems life, the adjustable frequency drive can simply increase the pump speed instead of requiring a new pump impeller.



2

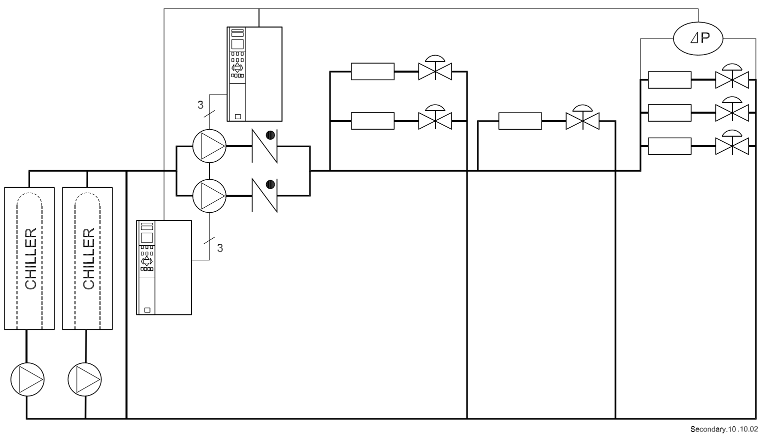
2.7.23 Secondary Pumps

Secondary pumps in a primary/secondary chilled water pumping system are used to distribute the chilled water to the loads from the primary production loop. The primary/secondary pumping system is used to hydronically de-couple one piping loop from another. In this case, the primary pump is used to maintain a constant flow through the chillers while allowing the secondary pumps to vary in flow, increase control and save energy.
If the primary/secondary design concept is not used and a variable volume system is designed, the chiller cannot shed its load properly when the flow rate drops far enough or too quickly. The chiller's low evaporator temperature safety then trips the chiller, requiring a manual reset. This situation is common in large installations, especially when two or more chillers are installed in parallel.

2.7.24 The VLT Solution

While the primary-secondary system with two-way valves improves energy savings and eases system control problems, the true energy savings and control potential is realized by adding adjustable frequency drives.
With the proper sensor location, the addition of adjustable frequency drives allows the pumps to vary their speed to follow the system curve instead of the pump curve.
This results in the elimination of wasted energy and eliminates most of the over-pressurization to which two-way valves can be subjected.
As the monitored loads are reached, the two-way valves close down. This increases the differential pressure measured across the load and two-way valve. As this differential pressure starts to rise, the pump is slowed to maintain the control head also called setpoint value. This setpoint value is calculated by summing the pressure drop of the load and two-way valve together under design conditions.

Please note that when running multiple pumps in parallel, they must run at the same speed to maximize energy savings, either with individual dedicated drives or one adjustable frequency drive running multiple pumps in parallel.



2.8 Control Structures

2.8.1 Control Principle

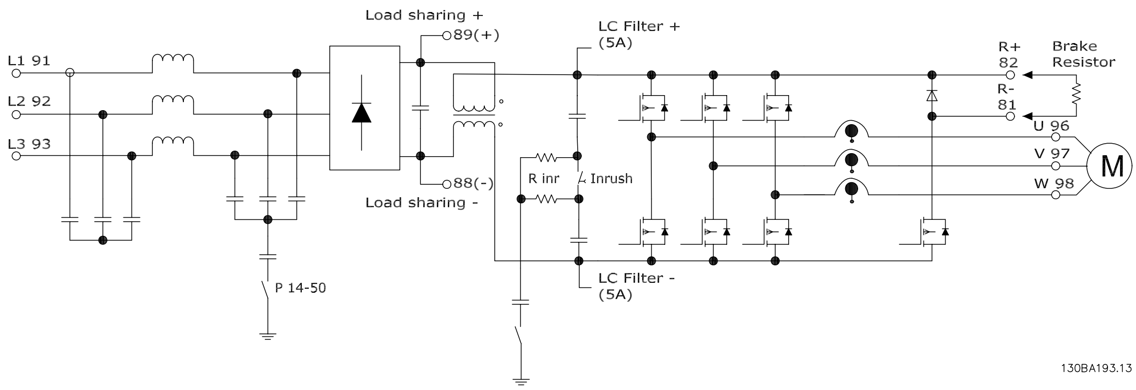


Figure 2.8: Control structures.

The adjustable frequency drive is a high performance unit for demanding applications. It can handle various kinds of motor control principles such as U/ f special motor mode and VVC plus and can handle normal squirrel cage asynchronous motors.
Short circuit behavior on this adjustable frequency drive depends on the three current transducers in the motor phases.

In par. 1-00 *Configuration Mode*, it can be selected if open-loop or closed-loop is to be used

2.8.2 Control Structure Open-loop

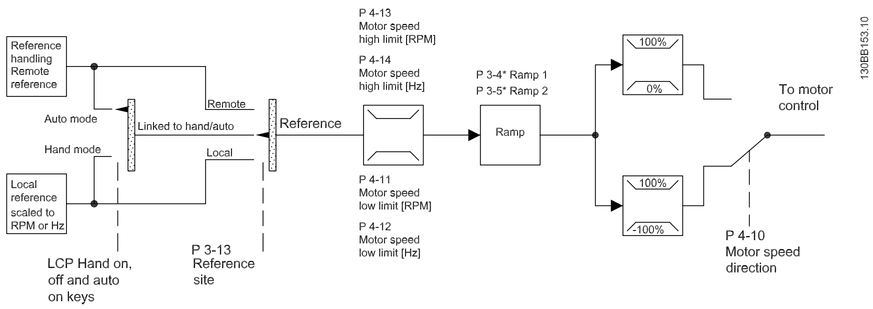


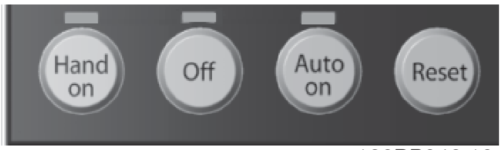
Figure 2.9: Open-loop structure.

In the configuration shown in the figure above, par. 1-00 *Configuration Mode* is set to Open-loop [0]. The resulting reference from the reference handling system or the local reference is received and fed through the ramp limitation and speed limitation before being sent to the motor control.
The output from the motor control is then limited by the maximum frequency limit.

2.8.3 Local (Hand On) and Remote (Auto On) Control

The adjustable frequency drive can be operated manually via the local control panel (LCP) or remotely via analog/digital inputs or serial bus.
If allowed in par. 0-40 *[Hand on] Key on LCP*, par. 0-41 *[Off] Key on LCP*, par. 0-42 *[Auto on] Key on LCP*, and par. 0-43 *[Reset] Key on LCP*, it is possible to start and stop the adjustable frequency drive byLCP using the [Hand ON] and [Off] keys. Alarms can be reset via the [RESET] key. After pressing the [Hand ON] key, the adjustable frequency drive goes into hand mode and follows (as default) the Local reference set by using the LCP arrow keys up [▲] and down [▼].

After pressing the [Auto On] key, the adjustable frequency drive goes into auto mode and follows (as default) the remote reference. In this mode, it is possible to control the adjustable frequency drive via the digital inputs and various serial interfaces (RS-485, USB, or an optional serial communication bus). See more about starting, stopping, changing ramps and parameter set-ups, etc. in par. group 5-1* (digital inputs) or par. group 8-5* (serial communication).



130BP046.10

Hand Off Auto LCP Keys	**Reference Site par. 3-13 *Reference Site***	**Active Reference**
Hand	Linked to Hand / Auto	Local
Hand -> Off	Linked to Hand / Auto	Local
Auto	Linked to Hand / Auto	Remote
Auto -> Off	Linked to Hand / Auto	Remote
All keys	Local	Local
All keys	Remote	Remote

The table shows under which conditions either the Local Reference or the Remote Reference is active. One of them is always active, but both can not be active at the same time.

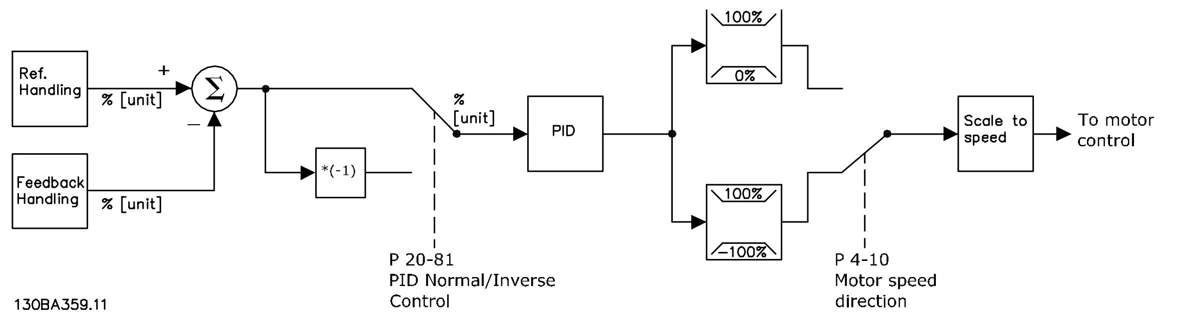
Local reference will force the configuration mode to open-loop, independent on the setting of par. 1-00 *Configuration Mode*.

Local Reference will be restored at power-down.

2.8.4 Control Structure Closed-loop

The internal controller allows the drive to become an integral part of the controlled system. The drive receives a feedback signal from a sensor in the system. It then compares this feedback to a setpoint reference value and determines the error, if any, between these two signals. It then adjusts the speed of the motor to correct this error.

For example, consider a pump application where the speed of a pump is to be controlled so that the static pressure in a pipe is constant. The desired static pressure value is supplied to the drive as the setpoint reference. A static pressure sensor measures the actual static pressure in the pipe and supplies this to the drive as a feedback signal. If the feedback signal is greater than the setpoint reference, the drive will slow down to reduce the pressure. In a similar way, if the pipe pressure is lower than the setpoint reference, the drive will automatically speed up to increase the pressure provided by the pump.



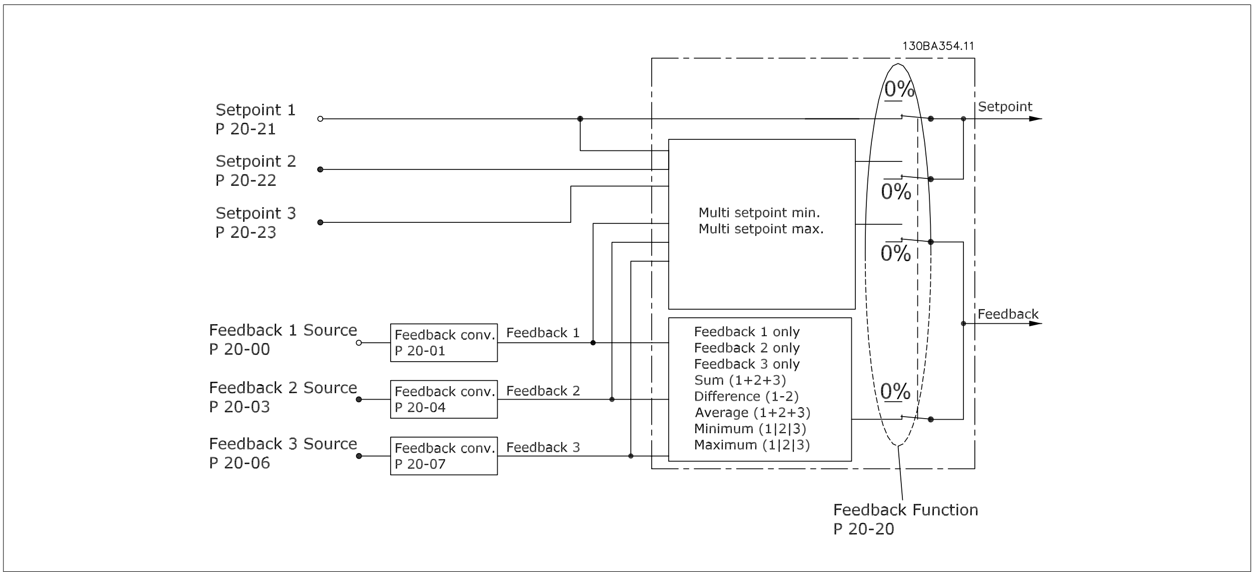
While the default values for the drive's closed-loop controller will often provide satisfactory performance, the control of the system can often be optimized by adjusting some of the closed-loop controller's parameters. It is also possible to autotune the PI constants.

The figure is a block diagram of the drive's closed-loop controller. The details of the reference handling block and feedback handling block are described in their respective sections below.

2

2.8.5 Feedback Handling

A block diagram of how the drive processes the feedback signal is shown below.



Feedback handling can be configured to work with applications requiring advanced control, such as multiple setpoints and multiple feedbacks. Three types of control are common.

Single Zone, Single Setpoint

Single Zone, Single Setpoint is a basic configuration. Setpoint 1 is added to any other reference (if any, see Reference Handling) and the feedback signal is selected using par. 20-20 *Feedback Function*.

Multi-zone, Single Setpoint

Multi-zone, Single Setpoint uses two or three feedback sensors, but only one setpoint. The feedbacks can be added, subtracted (only feedback 1 and 2) or averaged. In addition, the maximum or minimum value may be used. Setpoint 1 is used exclusively in this configuration.

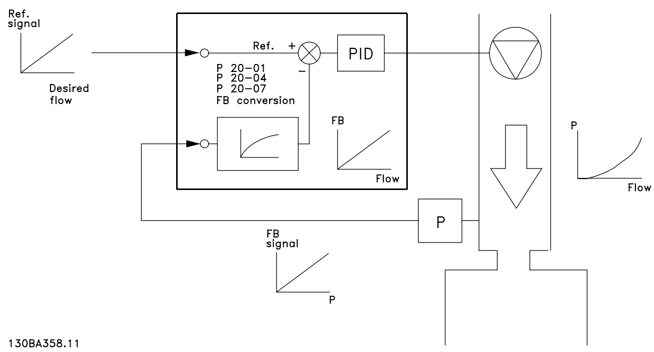
If *Multi Setpoint Min* [13] is selected, the setpoint/feedback pair with the largest difference controls the speed of the drive. *Multi Setpoint Maximum* [14] attempts to keep all zones at or below their respective setpoints, while *Multi Setpoint Min* [13] attempts to keep all zones at or above their respective setpoints.

Example:

A two-zone two setpoint application Zone 1 setpoint is 15 bar and the feedback is 5.5 bar. Zone 2 setpoint is 4.4 bar and the feedback is 4.6 bar. If *Multi Setpoint Max* [14] is selected, Zone 1’s setpoint and feedback are sent to the PID controller, since this has the smaller difference (feedback is higher than setpoint, resulting in a negative difference). If *Multi Setpoint Min* [13] is selected, Zone 2’s setpoint and feedback is sent to the PID controller, since this has the larger difference (feedback is lower than setpoint, resulting in a positive difference).

2.8.6 Feedback Conversion

In some applications, it may be useful to convert the feedback signal. One example of this is using a pressure signal to provide flow feedback. Since the square root of pressure is proportional to flow, the square root of the pressure signal yields a value proportional to the flow. This is shown below.

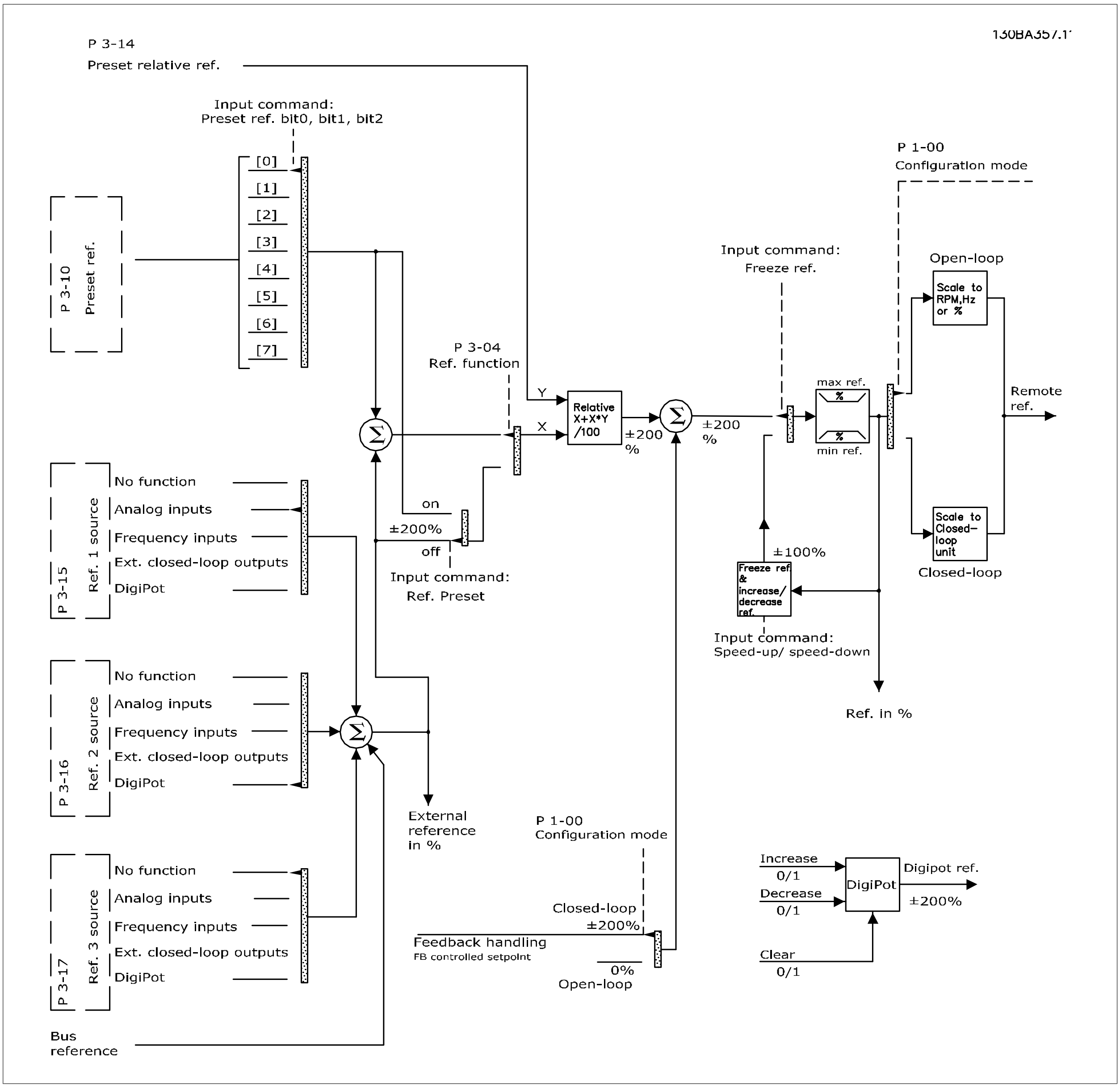


2

2.8.7 Reference Handling

Details for Open-loop and Closed-loop Operation

A block diagram of how the drive produces the Remote Reference is shown below:.



The Remote Reference is comprised of:

- Preset references.
- External references (analog inputs, pulse frequency inputs, digital potentiometer inputs and serial communication bus references).
- The preset relative reference.
- Feedback controlled setpoint.

Up to 8 preset references can be programmed in the drive. The active preset reference can be selected using digital inputs or the serial communications bus. The reference can also be supplied externally, most commonly from an analog input. This external source is selected by one of the 3 Reference Source parameters (par. 3-15 *Reference 1 Source*, par. 3-16 *Reference 2 Source* and par. 3-17 *Reference 3 Source*). Digipot is a digital potentiometer. This is also commonly called a speed up/speed down control, or a floating point control. To set it up, one digital input is programmed to increase the reference while another digital input is programmed to decrease the reference. A third digital input can be used to reset the digipot reference. All reference resources and the bus reference are added to produce the total external reference. The external reference, the preset reference or the sum of the two can be selected to be the active reference. Finally, this reference can by be scaled using par. 3-14 *Preset Relative Reference*.

The scaled reference is calculated as follows:

$$Reference = X + X \times \left(\frac{Y}{100}\right)$$

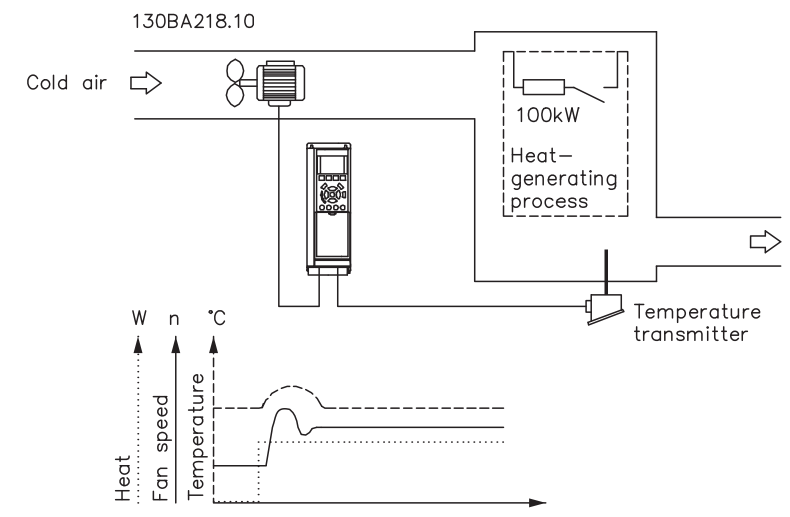
Where X is the external reference, the preset reference or the sum of these and Y is par. 3-14 *Preset Relative Reference* in [%].

If Y, par. 3-14 *Preset Relative Reference* is set to 0%, the reference will not be affected by the scaling.

2

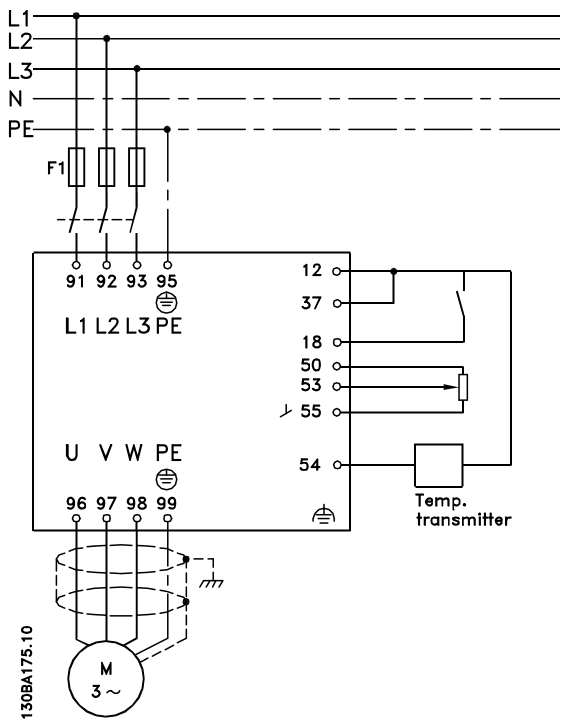
2.8.8 Example of Closed-loop PID Control

The following is an example of a closed-loop control for a ventilation system:



In a ventilation system, the temperature is to be maintained at a constant value. The desired temperature is set between 23° and 95°F [-5° and +35°C] using a 0–10 volt potentiometer. Because this is a cooling application, if the temperature is above the setpoint value, the speed of the fan must be increased to provide more cooling air flow. The temperature sensor has a range of 14°–104°F [-10°–+40°C] and uses a two-wire transmitter to provide a 4–20 mA signal. The output frequency range of the adjustable frequency drive is 10 to 50 Hz.

1. Start/Stop via switch connected between terminals 12 (+24 V) and 18.
2. Temperature reference via a potentiometer (23°–95° F [-5°–+35° C], 0–10 V) connected to terminals 50 (+10 V), 53 (input) and 55 (common).
3. Temperature feedback via transmitter (14°–104°F [-10°–+40°C], 4–20 mA) connected to terminal 54. Switch S202 behind the LCP set to ON (current input).



2.8.9 Programming Order

Function	Par. no.	Setting
1) Make sure the motor runs properly. Do the following:		
Set the motor parameters using nameplate data.	1-2*	As specified by motor nameplate
Run Automatic Motor Adaptation.	1-29	*Enable complete AMA* [1] and then run the AMA function.
2) Check that the motor is running in the right direction.		
Run Motor Rotation Check.	1-28	If the motor runs in the wrong direction, remove power temporarily and reverse two of the motor phases.
3) Make sure the adjustable frequency drive limits are set to safe values.		
Make sure that the ramp settings are within the capabilities of the drive and the allowed application operating specifications.	3-41 3-42	60 sec. 60 sec. Depends on motor/load size! Also active in hand mode.
Prohibit the motor from reversing (if necessary)	4-10	*Clockwise* [0]
Set acceptable limits for the motor speed.	4-12 4-14 4-19	10 Hz, *Motor min speed* 50 Hz, *Motor max speed* 50 Hz, *Drive max output frequency*
Switch from open-loop to closed-loop.	1-00	*Closed-loop* [3]
4) Configure the feedback to the PID controller.		
Select the appropriate reference/feedback unit.	20-12	*Bar* [71]
5) Configure the setpoint reference for the PID controller.		
Set acceptable limits for the setpoint reference.	20-13 20-14	0 Bar 10 Bar
Choose current or voltage by switches S201 / S202		
6) Scale the analog inputs used for setpoint reference and feedback.		
Scale Analog Input 53 for the pressure range of the potentiometer (0–10 Bar, 0–10 V).	6-10 6-11 6-14 6-15	0 V 10 V (default) 0 Bar 10 Bar
Scale Analog Input 54 for pressure sensor (0–10 Bar, 4–20 mA)	6-22 6-23 6-24 6-25	4 mA 20 mA (default) 0 Bar 10 Bar
7) Tune the PID controller parameters.		
Adjust the drive's closed-loop controller, if needed.	20-93 20-94	See Optimization of the PID Controller below.
8) Finished!		
Save the parameter setting to the LCP for safe keeping	0-50	*All to LCP* [1]

2.8.10 Tuning the Drive Closed-loop Controller

Once the drive's closed-loop controller has been set up, the performance of the controller should be tested. In many cases, its performance may be acceptable using the default values of par. 20-93 *PID Proportional Gain* and par. 20-94 *PID Integral Time*. However, in some cases it may be helpful to optimize these parameter values to provide faster system response while still controlling speed overshoot.

2.8.11 Manual PID Adjustment

1. Start the motor
2. Set par. 20-93 *PID Proportional Gain* to 0.3 and increase it until the feedback signal begins to oscillate. If necessary, start and stop the drive or make step changes in the setpoint reference to attempt to cause oscillation. Next reduce the PID Proportional Gain until the feedback signal stabilizes. Then reduce the proportional gain by 40-60%.
3. Set par. 20-94 *PID Integral Time* to 20 sec. and reduce it until the feedback signal begins to oscillate. If necessary, start and stop the drive or make step changes in the setpoint reference to attempt to cause oscillation. Next, increase the PID Integral Time until the feedback signal stabilizes. Then increase the Integral Time by 15–50%.
4. par. 20-95 *PID Differentiation Time* should only be used for very fast-acting systems. The typical value is 25% of par. 20-94 *PID Integral Time*. The differential function should only be used when the setting of the proportional gain and the integral time has been fully optimized. Make sure that oscillations of the feedback signal are sufficiently dampened by the low-pass filter for the feedback signal (par. 6-16, 6-26, 5-54 or 5-59 as required).

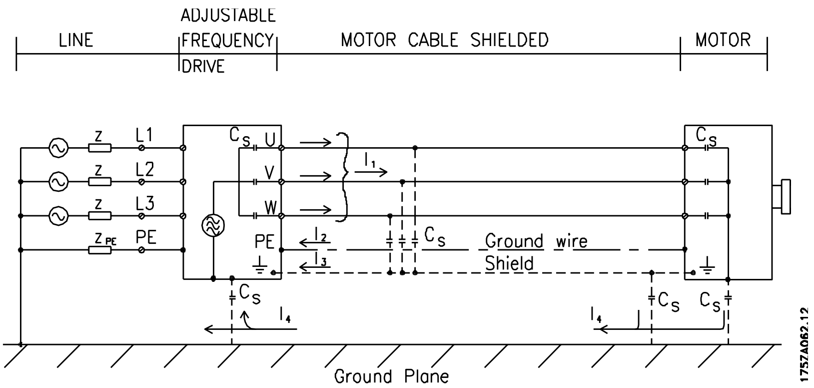
2

2.9 General aspects of EMC

2.9.1 General Aspects of EMC Emissions

Electrical interference is usually conducted at frequencies in the range of 150 kHz to 30 MHz. Airborne interference from the drive system in the range 30 MHz to 1 GHz is generated from the inverter, motor cable, and the motor.
As shown in the figure below, capacitive currents in the motor cable coupled with a high dV/dt from the motor voltage generate leakage currents.
The use of a shielded motor cable increases the leakage current (see figure below), because shielded cables have higher capacitance to ground than non-shielded cables. If the leakage current is not filtered, it will cause greater interference on the line power in the radio frequency range below approximately 5 MHz. Since the leakage current (I_1) is carried back to the unit through the shield (I_3), there will in principle only be a small electro-magnetic field (I_4) from the shielded motor cable according to the below figure.

The shield reduces the radiated interference, but increases the low-frequency interference in the line power supply. The motor cable shield must be connected to the adjustable frequency drive enclosure as well as on the motor enclosure. This is best done by using integrated shield clamps so as to avoid twisted shield ends (pigtails). These increase the shield impedance at higher frequencies, which reduces the shield effect and increases the leakage current (I_4).
If a shielded cable is used for the serial communication busserial communication bus, relay, control cable, signal interface and brake, the shield must be mounted on the enclosure at both ends. In some situations, however, it will be necessary to break the shield to avoid current loops.



If the shield is to be placed on a mounting plate for the adjustable frequency drive, the mounting plate must be made of metal, because the shield currents have to be conveyed back to the unit. Moreover, ensure good electrical contact from the mounting plate through the mounting screws to the adjustable frequency driver chassis.

When non-shielded cables are used, some emission requirements are not complied with, although the immunity requirements are observed.

In order to reduce the interference level from the entire system (unit + installation), make motor and brake cables as short as possible. Avoid placing cables with a sensitive signal level alongside motor and brake cables. Radio interference higher than 50 MHz (airborne) is especially generated by the control electronics.

2.9.2 Emission Requirements

According to the EMC product standard for adjustable speed adjustable frequency drives EN/IEC61800-3:2004, the EMC requirements depend on the intended use of the adjustable frequency drive. Four categories are defined in the EMC product standard. The definitions of the four categories together with the requirements for line power supply voltage-conducted emissions are given in the table below:

Category	Definition	Conducted emission requirement according to the limits given in EN55011
C1	adjustable frequency drives installed in the first environment (home and office) with a supply voltage less than 1,000 V.	Class B
C2	adjustable frequency drives installed in the first environment (home and office) with a supply voltage of less than 1000 V, which are neither plug-in nor movable and are intended to be installed and commissioned by a professional.	Class A Group 1
C3	adjustable frequency drives installed in the second environment (industrial) with a supply voltage lower than 1,000 V.	Class A Group 2
C4	Adjustable frequency drives installed in the second environment with a supply voltage equal to or above 1000 V or rated current equal to or above 400 A or intended for use in complex systems.	No limit line. An EMC plan should be made.

When the generic emission standards are used the adjustable frequency drives are required to comply with the following limits:

Environment	Generic standard	Conducted emission requirement according to the limits given in EN55011
First environment (home and office)	EN/IEC61000-6-3 Emission standard for residential, commercial and light industrial environments.	Class B
Second environment (industrial environment)	EN/IEC61000-6-4 Emission standard for industrial environments.	Class A Group 1

2.9.3 EMC Test Results (Emission)

The following test results were obtained using a system with an adjustable frequency drive (with options, if relevant), a shielded control cable, a control box with potentiometer, as well as a motor and motor-shielded cable.

RFI filter type		Conducted emission. Maximum shielded cable length.			Radiated emission	
		Industrial environment		Housing, trades and light industries	Industrial environment	Housing, trades and light industries
Standard		EN 55011 Class A2	EN 55011 Class A1	EN 55011 Class B	EN 55011 Class A1	EN 55011 Class B
H1						
1.5–60 hp [1.1–45 kW] 200–240 V	T2	492 ft [150 m]	492 ft [150 m]	164 ft [50 m]	Yes	No
1.5–125 hp [1.1–90 kW] 380–480 V	T4	492 ft [150 m]	492 ft [150 m]	164 ft [50 m]	Yes	No
H2						
1.5–5 hp [1.1–3.7 kW] 200–240 V	T2	16.4 ft [5 m]	No	No	No	No
7.5–60 hp [5.5–45 kW] 200–240 V	T2	82 ft [25 m]	No	No	No	No
1.5–10 hp [1.1–7.5 kW] 380–480 V	T4	16.4 ft [5 m]	No	No	No	No
15–125 hp [11–90 kW] 380–480 V	T4	82 ft [25 m]	No	No	No	No
150–1350 hp [110–1000 kW] 380–480 V	T4	492 ft [150 m]	No	No	No	No
60–550 hp [45–1400 kW] 525–690 V	T7	492 ft [150 m]	No	No	No	No
H3						
1.5–60 hp [1.1–45 kW] 200–240 V	T2	246 ft [75 m]	164 ft [50 m]	32.8 ft [10 m]	Yes	No
1.5–125 hp [1.1–90 kW] 380–480 V	T4	246 ft [75 m]	164 ft [50 m]	32.8 ft [10 m]	Yes	No
H4						
150–1350 hp [110–1000 kW] 380–480 V	T4	492 ft [150 m]	492 ft [150 m]	No	Yes	No
60–550 hp [45–400] kW 525–690 V	T7	492 ft [150 m]	98 ft [30 m]	No	No	No
Hx						
1.5–125 hp [1.1–90 kW] 525–600 V	T6	-	-	-	-	-

Table 2.1: EMC Test Results (Emission)

HX, H1, H2 or H3 is defined in the type code pos. 16 - 17 for EMC filters

HX - No EMC filters build in the adjustable frequency drive (600 V units only)

H1 - Integrated EMC filter. Fulfill Class A1/B

H2 - No additional EMC filter. Fulfill Class A2

H3 - Integrated EMC filter. Fulfill class A1/B (Frame size A1 only)

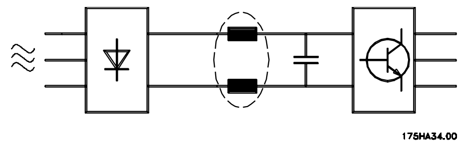
H4 - Integrated EMC filter. Fulfill class A1

2.9.4 General Aspects of Harmonics Emission

An adjustable frequency drive takes up a non-sinusoidal current from the line power, which increases the input current I_{RMS}. A non-sinusoidal current is transformed by means of a Fourier analysis and split up into sine-wave currents with different frequencies, i.e., different harmonic currents I_N with 50 Hz as the basic frequency:

Harmonic currents	I_1	I_5	I_7
Hz	50 Hz	250 Hz	350 Hz

The harmonics do not affect the power consumption directly but increase the heat losses in the installation (transformer, cables). Consequently, in plants with a high percentage of rectifier load, maintain harmonic currents at a low level to prevent an overload of the transformer and high temperature in the cables.



NOTE!
Some of the harmonic currents might disturb communication equipment connected to the same transformer or cause resonance in connection with power-factor correction batteries.

To ensure low harmonic currents, the adjustable frequency drive is standard-equipped with intermediate circuit coils. This normally reduces the input current I_{RMS} by 40%.

The voltage distortion on the line power supply voltage depends on the size of the harmonic currents multiplied by the line power impedance for the frequency in question. The total voltage distortion THD is calculated on the basis of the individual voltage harmonics using this formula:

$$THD\,\% = \sqrt{U\frac{2}{5} + U\frac{2}{7} + \ldots + U\frac{2}{N}}$$

(U_N% of U)

2.9.5 Harmonics Emission Requirements

Equipment connected to the public supply network:

Options:	Definition:
1	IEC/EN 61000-3-2 Class A for 3-phase balanced equipment (for professional equipment only up to 1.5 hp [1 kW] total power).
2	IEC/EN 61000-3-12 Equipment 16A-75A and professional equipment as from 1 kW up to 16A phase current.

2

2.9.6 Harmonics Test Results (Emission)

Power sizes up to PK75 in T2 and T4 complies with IEC/EN 61000-3-2 Class A. Power sizes from P1K1 and up to P18K in T2 and up to P90K in T4 complies with IEC/EN 61000-3-12, Table 4. Power sizes P110 - P450 in T4 also complies with IEC/EN 61000-3-12 even though not required because currents are above 75 A.

	Individual Harmonic Current I_n/I_1 (%)				Harmonic current distortion factor (%)	
	I_5	I_7	I_{11}	I_{13}	THD	PWHD
Actual (typical)	40	20	10	8	46	45
Limit for R_{sce}≥120	40	25	15	10	48	46

Table 2.2: Harmonics test results (Emission)

Provided that the short-circuit power of the supply S_{sc} is greater than or equal to:

$$S_{SC} = \sqrt{3} \times R_{SCE} \times U_{line\ power} \times I_{equ} = \sqrt{3} \times 120 \times 400 \times I_{equ}$$

at the interface point between the user's supply and the public system (R_{sce}).

It is the responsibility of the installer or user of the equipment to ensure, by consultation with the distribution network operator if necessary, that the equipment is connected only to a supply with a short-circuit power S_{sc} greater than or equal to specified above.
Other power sizes can be connected to the public supply network by consultation with the distribution network operator.

Compliance with various system level guidelines:
The harmonic current data in the table are given in accordance with IEC/EN61000-3-12 with reference to the Power Drive Systems product standard. They may be used as the basis for calculation of the harmonic currents' influence on the power supply system and for the documentation of compliance with relevant regional guidelines: IEEE 519 -1992; G5/4.

2.9.7 Immunity Requirements

The immunity requirements for adjustable frequency drives depend on the environment where they are installed. The requirements for the industrial environment are higher than the requirements for the home and office environment. All Danfoss adjustable frequency drives comply with the requirements for the industrial environment and consequently comply also with the lower requirements for home and office environment with a large safety margin.

In order to document immunity against electrical interference from electrical phenomena, the following immunity tests have been made on a system consisting of an adjustable frequency drive (with options if relevant), a shielded control cable and a control box with potentiometer, motor cable and motor.
The tests were performed in accordance with the following basic standards:

- **EN 61000-4-2 (IEC 61000-4-2):** Electrostatic discharges (ESD): Simulation of electrostatic discharges from human beings.
- **EN 61000-4-3 (IEC 61000-4-3):** Incoming electromagnetic field radiation, amplitude modulated simulation of the effects of radar and radio communication equipment as well as mobile communications equipment.
- EN 61000-4-4 (IEC 61000-4-4): Electrical interference: Simulation of interference brought about by switching a contactor, relay or similar devices.
- **EN 61000-4-5 (IEC 61000-4-5):** Surge transients: Simulation of transients brought about, e.g., by lightning that strikes near installations.
- **EN 61000-4-6 (IEC 61000-4-6):** RF Common mode: Simulation of the effect from radio-transmission equipment joined by connection cables.

See following EMC immunity form.

EMC immunity form

Voltage range: 200–240 V, 380–480 V					
Basic standard	Burst IEC 61000-4-4	Surge IEC 61000-4-5	ESD IEC 61000-4-2	Radiated electromagnetic field IEC 61000-4-3	RF common mode voltage IEC 61000-4-6
Acceptance criterion	B	B	B	A	A
Line	4 kV CM	2 kV/2 Ω DM 4 kV/12 Ω CM	—	—	10 V_{RMS}
Motor	4 kV CM	4 kV/2 Ω 1)	—	—	10 V_{RMS}
Brake	4 kV CM	4 kV/2 Ω 1)	—	—	10 V_{RMS}
Load sharing	4 kV CM	4 kV/2 Ω 1)	—	—	10 V_{RMS}
Control wires	2 kV CM	2 kV/2 Ω 1)	—	—	10 V_{RMS}
Standard bus	2 kV CM	2 kV/2 Ω 1)	—	—	10 V_{RMS}
Relay wires	2 kV CM	2 kV/2 Ω 1)	—	—	10 V_{RMS}
Application and serial communication bus options	2 kV CM	2 kV/2 Ω 1)	—	—	10 V_{RMS}
LCP cable	2 kV CM	2 kV/2 Ω 1)	—	—	10 V_{RMS}
External 24 V DC	2 kV CM	0.5 kV/2 Ω DM 1 kV/12 Ω CM	—	—	10 V_{RMS}
Enclosure	—	—	8 kV AD 6 kV CD	10 V/m	—

AD: Air Discharge
CD: Contact Discharge
CM: Common mode
DM: Differential mode
1. Injection on cable shield.

Table 2.3: Immunity

2.10 Galvanic isolation (PELV)

2.10.1 PELV - Protective Extra Low Voltage

PELV offers protection by way of extra low voltage. Protection against electric shock is ensured when the electrical supply is of the PELV type and the installation is made as described in local/national regulations on PELV supplies.

All control terminals and relay terminals 01-03/04-06 comply with PELV (Protective Extra Low Voltage) (Does not apply to grounded Delta leg above 400 V).

Galvanic (ensured) isolation is obtained by fulfilling requirements for higher isolation and by providing the relevant creapage/clearance distances. These requirements are described in the EN 61800-5-1 standard.

The components that make up the electrical isolation, as described below, also comply with the requirements for higher isolation and the relevant test as described in EN 61800-5-1.
The PELV galvanic isolation can be shown in six locations (see illustration):

In order to maintain PELV, all connections made to the control terminals must be PELV. For example, the thermistor must be reinforced/double insulated.

1. Power supply (SMPS) incl. signal isolation of U_{DC}, indicating the intermediate current voltage.
2. Gate drive that runs the IGBTs (trigger transformers/opto-couplers).
3. Current transducers.
4. Opto-coupler, brake module.
5. Internal soft-charge, RFI and temperature measurement circuits.
6. Custom relays.

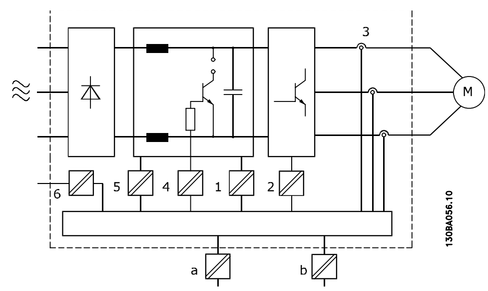


Figure 2.10: Galvanic isolation

The functional galvanic isolation (a and b in drawing) is for the 24 V backup option and for the RS-485 standard bus interface.

Installation at high altitude:
380–500 V, enclosure A, B and C: At altitudes above 6,500 ft, please contact Danfoss regarding PELV.
380–500V, enclosure D, E and F: At altitudes above 10,000 ft [3 km], please contact Danfoss regarding PELV.
525–690 V: At altitudes above 6,500 ft [2 km]), please contact Danfoss regarding PELV.

2.11 Ground Leakage Current

Touching the electrical parts may be fatal - even after the equipment has been disconnected from line power.
Also make sure that other voltage inputs have been disconnected, such as load sharing (linkage of DC intermediate circuit), as well as the motor connection for kinetic backup.
Before touching any electrical parts, wait at least the amount of time indicated in the *Safety Precautions* section.
Shorter time is allowed only if indicated on the nameplate for the specific unit.

Leakage Current
The ground leakage current from the adjustable frequency drive exceeds 3.5 mA. To ensure that the ground cable has a good mechanical connection to the ground connection (terminal 95), the cable cross-section must be at least 0.016 in^2 [10 mm^2] or 2 rated ground wires terminated separately.
Residual Current Device
This product can cause DC current in the protective conductor. Where a residual current device (RCD) is used for protection in case of direct or indirect contact, only an RCD of Type B is allowed on the supply side of this product. Otherwise, another protective measure shall be applied, such as separation from the environment by double or reinforced insulation, or isolation from the supply system by a transformer. See also RCD Application Note MN.90.GX.02.
Protective grounding of the adjustable frequency drive and the use of RCDs must always follow national and local regulations.

2.12 Brake Function

2.12.1 Selection of Brake Resistor

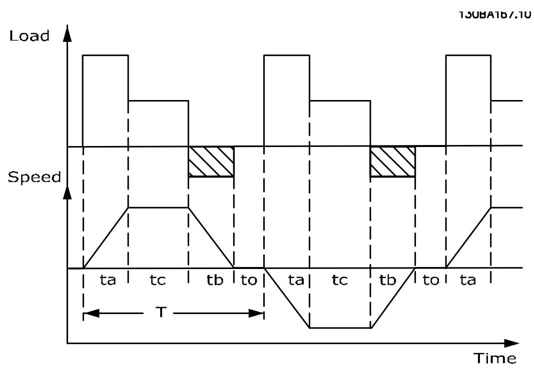
In certain applications, for instance in tunnel or underground railway station ventilation systems, it is desirable to bring the motor to a stop more rapidly than can be achieved through controlling via ramp-down or by free-wheeling. In such applications, dynamic braking with a brake resistor may be utilized. Using a brake resistor ensures that the energy is absorbed in the resistor and not in the adjustable frequency drive.

If the amount of kinetic energy transferred to the resistor in each braking period is not known, the average power can be calculated on the basis of the cycle time and braking time, also known as the intermitted duty cycle. The resistor intermittent duty cycle is an indication of the duty cycle at which the resistor is active. The below figure shows a typical braking cycle.

The intermittent duty cycle for the resistor is calculated as follows:

$Duty\ Cycle = t_b / T$

T = cycle time in seconds
t_b is the braking time in seconds (as part of the total cycle time)



Danfoss offers brake resistors with duty cycle of 5%, 10% and 40% suitable for use with the FC 102 adjustable frequency drive series. If a 10% duty cycle resistor is applied, it is capable of absorbing braking energy up to 10% of the cycle time, with the remaining 90% being used to dissipate heat from the resistor.

For further selection advice, please contact Danfoss.

NOTE!
If a short circuit in the brake transistor occurs, power dissipation in the brake resistor is only prevented by using a line switch or contactor to disconnect the line power for the adjustable frequency drive. (The contactor can be controlled by the adjustable frequency drive).

2.12.2 Brake Resistor Calculation

The brake resistance is calculated as shown:

$$R_{br}[\Omega] = \frac{U_{dc}^2}{P_{peak}}$$

where

$P_{peak} = P_{motor} \times M_{br} \times \eta_{motor} \times \eta[W]$

As can be seen, the brake resistance depends on the intermediate circuit voltage (U_{DC}).

The brake function of the adjustable frequency drive is settled in 3 areas of the line power supply:

Size	Brake active	Warning before cut out	Cut out (trip)
3 x 200–240 V	390 V (U_{DC})	405 V	410 V
3 x 380–480 V	778 V	810 V	820 V
3 x 525–600 V	943 V	965 V	975 V
3 x 525–690 V	1084 V	1109 V	1130 V

NOTE!

Make sure that the brake resistor can cope with a voltage of 410 V, 820 V or 975 V, unless Danfoss brake resistors are used.

Danfoss recommends the brake resistance R_{rec}, i.e., one that guarantees that the adjustable frequency drive be able to brake at the highest braking torque ($M_{br(\%)}$) of 110%. The formula can be written as:

$$R_{rec}[\Omega] = \frac{U_{dc}^2 \times 100}{P_{motor} \times M_{br\,(\%)} \times \times_{motor}}$$

η_{motor} is typically at 0.90

η is typically at 0.98

For 200 V, 480 V and 600 V adjustable frequency drives, R_{rec} at 160% braking torque is written as:

$$200V : R_{rec} = \frac{107780}{P_{motor}}[\Omega]$$

$$480V : R_{rec} = \frac{375300}{P_{motor}}[\Omega]^{1)}$$

$$480V : R_{rec} = \frac{428914}{P_{motor}}[\Omega]^{2)}$$

$$600V : R_{rec} = \frac{630137}{P_{motor}}[\Omega]$$

$$690V : R_{rec} = \frac{832664}{P_{motor}}[\Omega]$$

1) For adjustable frequency drives ≤ 10 hp [7.5 kW] shaft output

2) For adjustable frequency drives > 10 hp [7.5 kW] shaft output

NOTE!

The resistor brake circuit resistance selected should not be higher than that recommended by Danfoss. If a brake resistor with a higher ohmic value is selected, the braking torque may not be achieved because there is a risk that the adjustable frequency drive cuts out for safety reasons.

NOTE!
If a short circuit in the brake transistor occurs, power dissipation in the brake resistor is only prevented by using a line switch or contactor to disconnect the line power for the adjustable frequency drive. (The contactor can be controlled by the adjustable frequency drive).

Do not touch the brake resistor, as it can get very hot during/after braking.

2.12.3 Control with Brake Function

The brake is protected against short-circuiting of the brake resistor, and the brake transistor is monitored to ensure that short-circuiting of the transistor is detected. A relay/digital output can be used for protecting the brake resistor against overloading in connection with a fault in the adjustable frequency drive.
In addition, the brake makes it possible to read out the momentary power and the mean power for the latest 120 seconds. The brake can also monitor the power energizing and make sure it does not exceed a limit selected in par. 2-12 *Brake Power Limit (kW)*. In par. 2-13 *Brake Power Monitoring*, select the function to carry out when the power transmitted to the brake resistor exceeds the limit set in par. 2-12 *Brake Power Limit (kW)*.

NOTE!
Monitoring the braking energy is not a safety function; a thermal switch is required for that purpose. The brake resistor circuit is not protected against ground leakage.

Overvoltage control (OVC) (exclusive brake resistor) can be selected as an alternative brake function in par. 2-17 *Over-voltage Control*. This function is active for all units. The function ensures that a trip can be avoided if the DC link voltage increases. This is done by increasing the output frequency to limit the voltage from the DC link. It is a very useful function, e.g., if the ramp-down time is too short since tripping of the adjustable frequency drive is avoided. In this situation, the ramp-down time is extended.

2.12.4 Brake Resistor Cabling

EMC (twisted cables/shielding)
To reduce the electrical noise from the wires between the brake resistor and the adjustable frequency drive, the wires must be twisted.

For enhanced EMC performance, a metal shield can be used.

2.13 Extreme Running Conditions

Short Circuit (Motor Phase – Phase)
The adjustable frequency drive is protected against short circuits by means of current measurement in each of the three motor phases or in the DC link. A short circuit between two output phases will cause an overcurrent in the inverter. The inverter will be turned off individually when the short circuit current exceeds the permitted value (Alarm 16 Trip Lock).
To protect the adjustable frequency drive against a short circuit at the load sharing and brake outputs, please see the design guidelines.

Switching on the Output
Switching on the output between the motor and the adjustable frequency drive is fully permitted. You cannot damage the adjustable frequency drive in any way by switching on the output. However, fault messages may appear.

Motor-generated Overvoltage
The voltage in the intermediate circuit is increased when the motor acts as a generator. This occurs in the following cases:

1. The load drives the motor (at constant output frequency from the adjustable frequency drive), i.e., the load generates energy.
2. During deceleration ("ramp-down"), if the moment of inertia is high, the friction is low and the ramp-down time is too short for the energy to be dissipated as a loss in the adjustable frequency drive, the motor and the installation.
3. Incorrect slip compensation setting may cause higher DC link voltage.

The control unit may attempt to correct the ramp if possible (par. 2-17 *Over-voltage Control*.
The inverter turns off to protect the transistors and the intermediate circuit capacitors when a certain voltage level is reached.
See par. 2-10 *Brake Function* and par. 2-17 *Over-voltage Control* to select the method used for controlling the intermediate circuit voltage level.

Line Drop-out
During a line drop-out, the adjustable frequency drive keeps running until the intermediate circuit voltage drops below the minimum stop level, which is typically 15% below the adjustable frequency drive's lowest rated supply voltage. The AC line voltage before the drop-out and the motor load determine how long it takes for the inverter to coast.

Static Overload in VVC^{plus} Mode
When the adjustable frequency drive is overloaded (the torque limit in par. 4-16 *Torque Limit Motor Mode*/par. 4-17 *Torque Limit Generator Mode* is reached), the controls reduces the output frequency to reduce the load.
If the overload is excessive, a current may occur that makes the adjustable frequency drive cut out after approximately 5-10 s.

Operation within the torque limit is limited in time (0–60 s) in par. 14-25 *Trip Delay at Torque Limit*.

2.13.1 Motor Thermal Protection

This is the way Danfoss is protecting the motor from being overheated. It is an electronic feature that simulates a bimetal relay based on internal measurements. The characteristic is shown in the following figure:

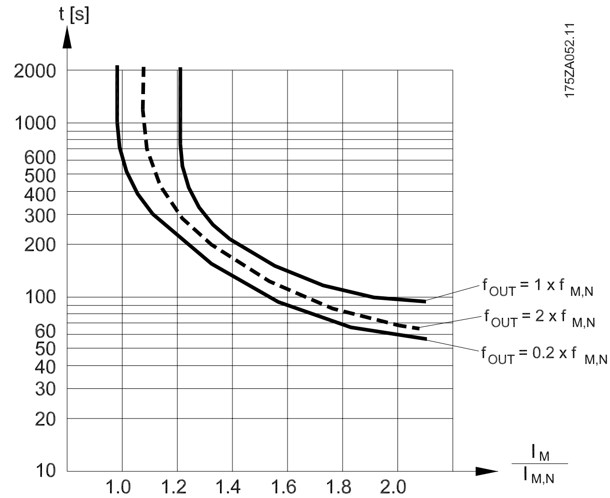


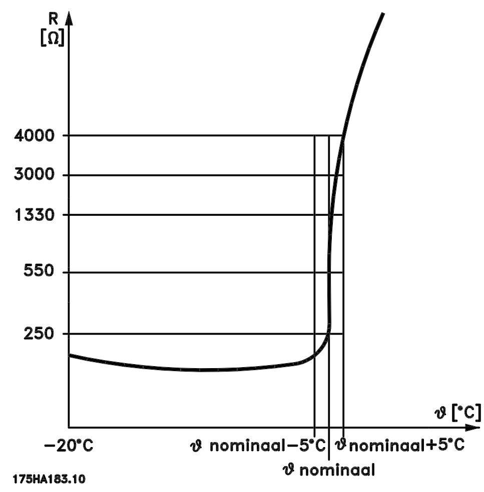
Figure 2.11: The X-axis show the ratio between I_{motor} and I_{motor} nominal. The Y-axis shows the time in seconds before the ETR cuts off and trips the drive. The curves show the characteristic nominal speed at twice the nominal speed and at 0.2x the nominal speed.

It is clear that at lower speed, the ETR cuts of at lower heat due to less cooling of the motor. In that way, the motors are protected from being overheated even at low speeds. The ETR feature calculates the motor temperature based on actual current and speed. The calculated temperature is visible as a readout parameter in par. 16-18 *Motor Thermal* in the adjustable frequency drive.

The thermistor cut-out value is > 3 kΩ.

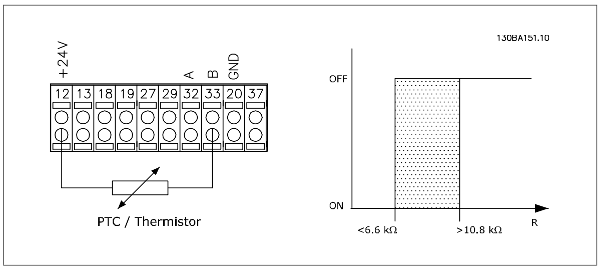
Integrate a thermistor (PTC sensor) in the motor for winding protection.

Motor protection can be implemented using a range of techniques: PTC sensor in motor windings; mechanical thermal switch (Klixon type); or Electronic Thermal Relay (ETR).

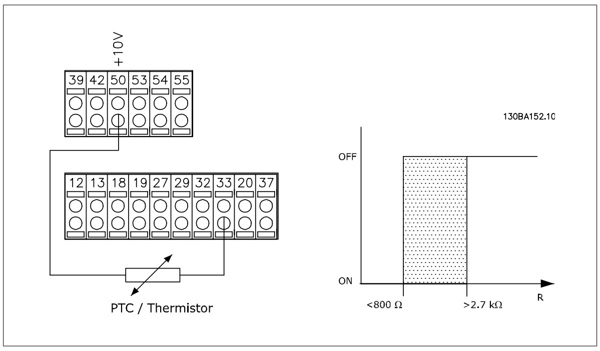


Using a digital input and 24 V as power supply:
Example: The adjustable frequency drive trips when the motor temperature is too high.
Parameter set-up:

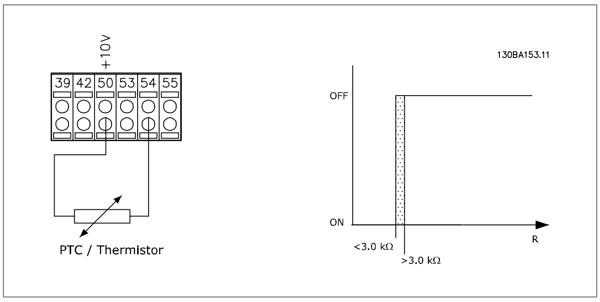
Set par. 1-90 *Motor Thermal Protection* to *Thermistor Trip* [2]
Set par. 1-93 *Thermistor Source* to *Digital Input 33* [6]



Using a digital input and 10 V as power supply:
Example: The adjustable frequency drive trips when the motor temperature is too high.
Parameter set-up:
Set par. 1-90 *Motor Thermal Protection* to *Thermistor Trip* [2]
Set par. 1-93 *Thermistor Source* to *Digital Input 33* [6]



Using an analog input and 10 V as power supply:
Example: The adjustable frequency drive trips when the motor temperature is too high.
Parameter set-up:
Set par. 1-90 *Motor Thermal Protection* to *Thermistor Trip* [2]
Set par. 1-93 *Thermistor Source* to *Analog Input 54* [2]
Do not select a reference source.



Input	**Supply Voltage**	**Threshold**
Digital/analog	Volt	Cut-out Values
Digital	24 V	< 6.6 kΩ - > 10.8 kΩ
Digital	10 V	< 800Ω - > 2.7 kΩ
Analog	10 V	< 3.0 kΩ - > 3.0 kΩ

NOTE!
Ensure that the chosen supply voltage follows the specification of the thermistor element utilized.

Summary

With the Torque limit feature, the motor is protected for being overloaded independent of the speed. With the ETR, the motor is protected for being overheated and there is no need for any further motor protection. That means when the motor is heated up, the ETR timer controls how long the motor can be running at the high temperature before it is stopped to prevent overheating. If the motor is overloaded without reaching the temperature where the ETR shuts of the motor, the torque limit protects the motor and application from becoming overloaded.

ETR is activated in par.   and is controlled in par. 4-16 *Torque Limit Motor Mode*. The time before the torque limit warning trips the adjustable frequency drive is set in par. 14-25 *Trip Delay at Torque Limit*.

3 VLT HVAC Drive Selection

3.1 Options and Accessories

Danfoss offers a wide range of options and accessories for adjustable frequency drives.

3.1.1 Mounting Option Modules in Slot B

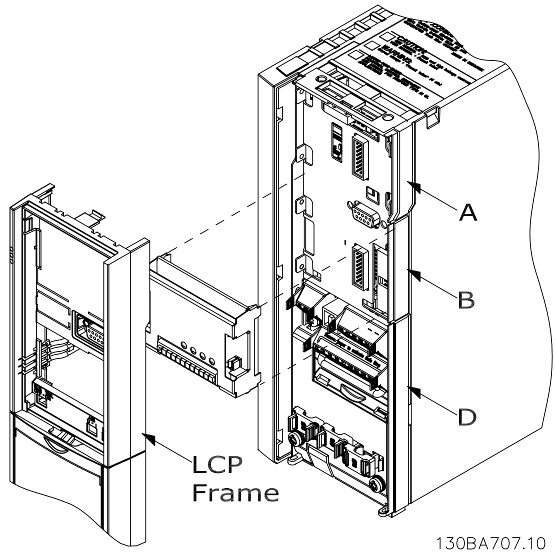
The power to the adjustable frequency drive must be disconnected.

For A2 and A3 enclosures:

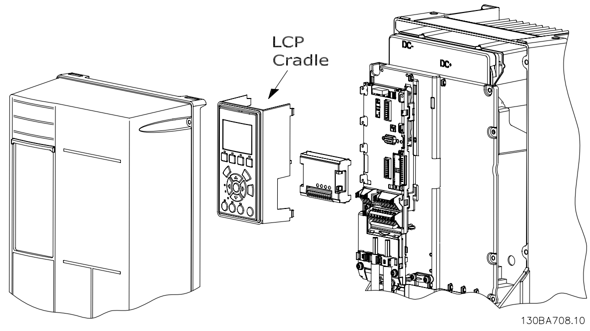
- Remove the LCP (Local Control Panel), the terminal cover, and the LCP frame from the adjustable frequency drive.
- Fit the MCB1xx option card into slot B.
- Connect the control cables and fasten the cables with the enclosed cable strips.
  Remove the knock-out in the extended LCP frame delivered in the option set so that the option will fit under the extended LCP frame.
- Fit the extended LCP frame and terminal cover.
- Fit the LCP or blind cover in the extended LCP frame.
- Connect power to the adjustable frequency drive.
- Set up the input/output functions in the corresponding parameters, as mentioned in the section *General Technical Data*.

For B1, B2, C1 and C2 enclosures:

- Remove the LCP and the LCP cradle
- Fit the MCB 1xx option card into slot B
- Connect the control cables and relieve the cable by the enclosed cable strips.
- Fit the cradle.
- Fit the LCP



A2, A3 and B3 enclosures



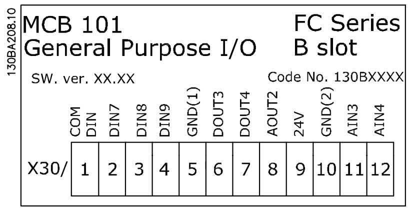
A5, B1, B2, B4, C1, C2, C3 and C4 enclosures

3.1.2 General Purpose Input Output Module MCB 101

MCB 101 is used for extension of the number of digital and analog inputs and outputs of the adjustable frequency drive.

Contents: MCB 101 must be fitted into slot B in the adjustable frequency drive.

- MCB 101 option module
- Extended LCP frame
- Terminal cover



Galvanic Isolation in the MCB 101

Digital/analog inputs are galvanically isolated from other inputs/outputs on the MCB 101 and in the control card of the adjustable frequency drive. Digital/analog outputs in the MCB 101 are galvanically isolated from other inputs/outputs on the MCB 101, but not from these on the control card of the adjustable frequency drive.

If digital inputs 7, 8 or 9 are to be switched using the internal 24 V power supply (terminal 9), the connection between terminal 1 and 5 illustrated in the drawing has to be established.

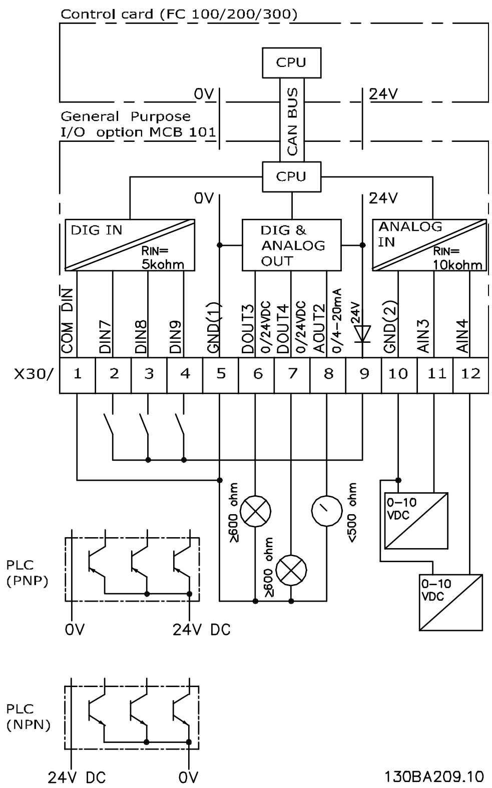


Figure 3.1: Principle Diagram

3

3.1.3 Digital Inputs - Terminal X30/1-4

Parameters for set-up: 5-16, 5-17 and 5-18

Number of digital inputs	Voltage level	Voltage levels	Tolerance	Max. Input impedance
3	0–24 V DC	PNP type: Common = 0 V Logic "0": Input < 5 V DC Logic "0": Input > 10 V DC NPN type: Common = 24 V Logic "0": Input > 19 V DC Logic "0": Input < 14 V DC	± 28 V continuous ± 37 V in minimum 10 sec.	Approx. 5 k ohm

3.1.4 Analog Voltage Inputs - Terminal X30/10-12

Parameters for set-up: 6-3*, 6-4* and 16-76

Number of analog voltage inputs	Standardized input signal	Tolerance	Resolution	Max. Input impedance
2	0–10 V DC	± 20 V continuously	10 bits	Approximately 5 K ohm

3.1.5 Digital Outputs - Terminal X30/5-7

Parameters for set-up: 5-32 and 5-33

Number of digital outputs	Output level	Tolerance	Max.impedance
2	0 or 24 V DC	± 4 V	≥ 600 ohm

3.1.6 Analog Outputs - Terminal X30/5+8

Parameters for set-up: 6-6* and 16-77

Number of analog outputs	Output signal level	Tolerance	Max.impedance
1	0/4–20 mA	± 0.1 mA	< 500 ohm

3.1.7 Relay Option MCB 105

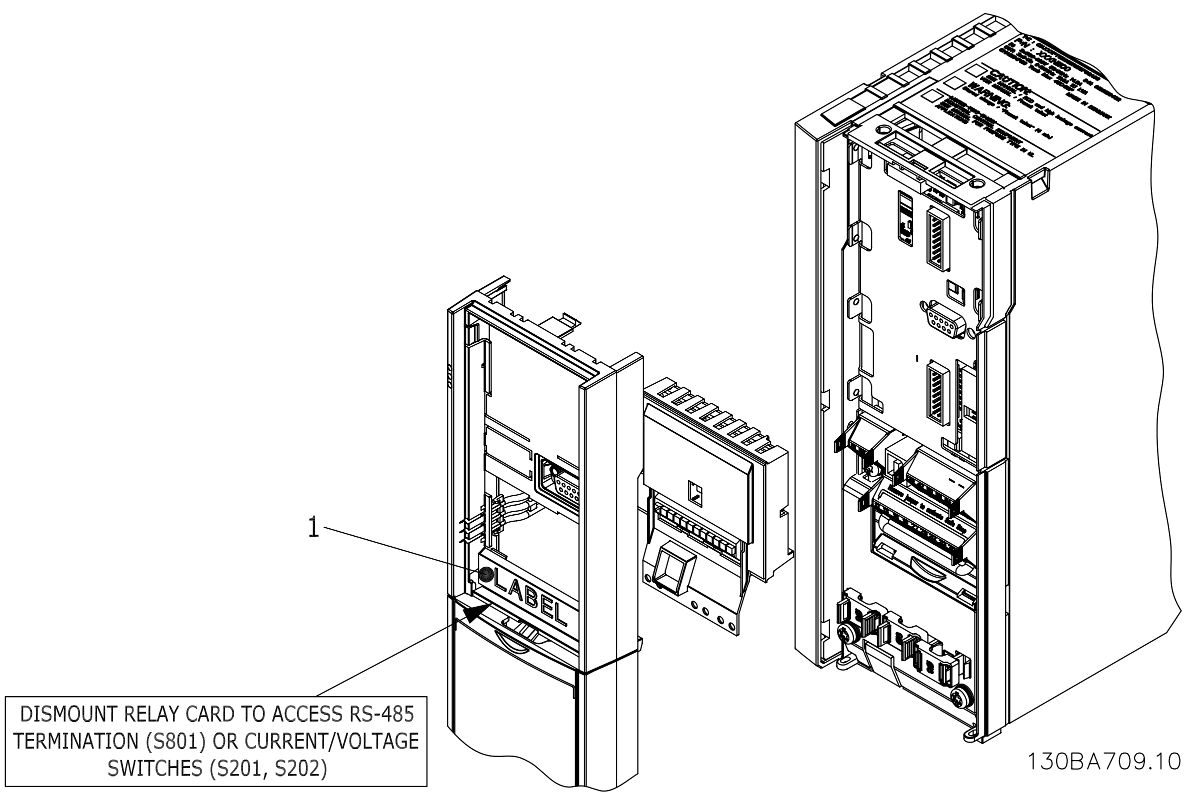
The MCB 105 option includes 3 pieces of SPDT contacts and must be fitted into option slot B.

Electrical Data:	
Max terminal load (AC-1) [1] (Resistive load)	240 V AC 2A
Max terminal load (AC-15)[1] (Inductive load @ cosφ 0.4)	240 V AC 0.2 A
Max terminal load (DC-1)[1] (Resistive load)	24 V DC 1 A
Max terminal load (DC-13)[1] (Inductive load)	24 V DC 0.1 A
Min terminal load (DC)	5 V 10 mA
Max switching rate at rated load/min load	6 min^{-1}/20 sec^{-1}

1) IEC 947 part 4 and 5

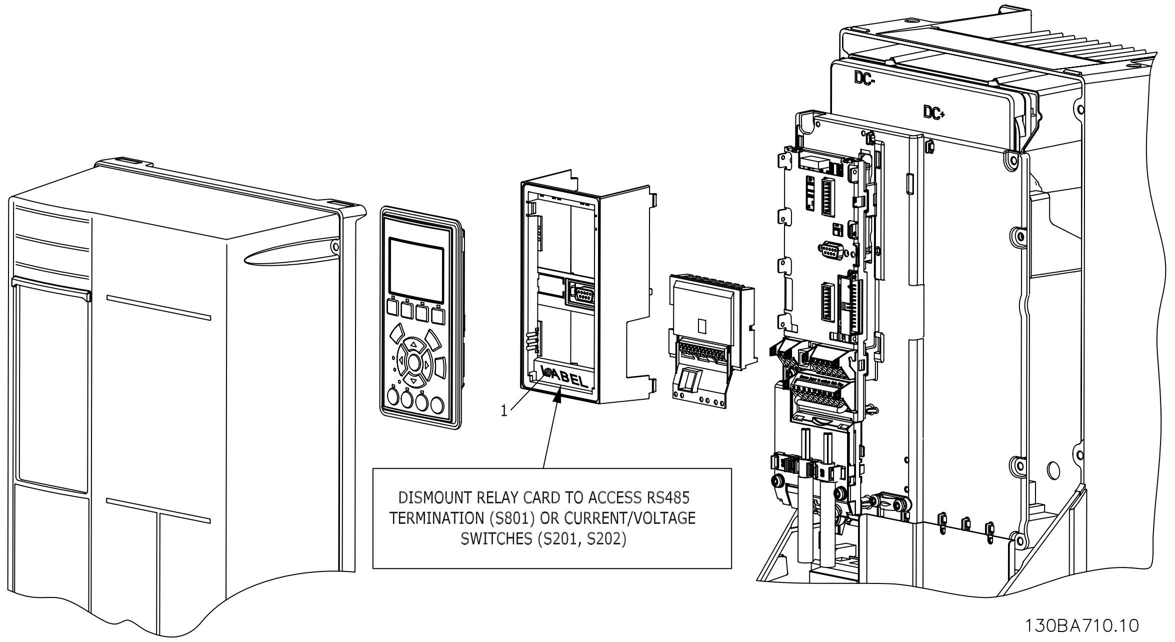
When the relay option kit is ordered separately, the kit includes:

- Relay Module MCB 105
- Extended LCP frame and enlarged terminal cover
- Label for covering access to switches S201, S202 and S801
- Cable strips for fastening cables to relay module



A2-A3-B3	A5-B1-B2-B4-C1-C2-C3-C4

[1] **IMPORTANT**! The label MUST be placed on the LCP frame as shown (UL approved).

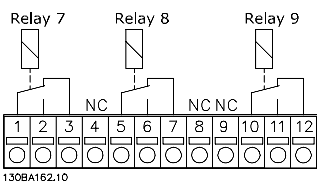


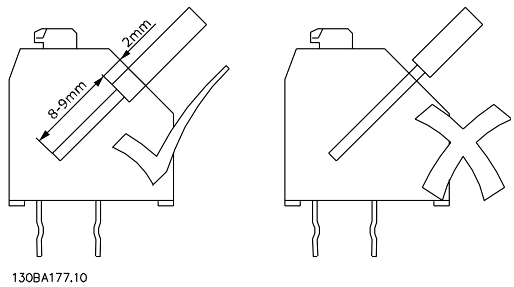
Warning Dual supply

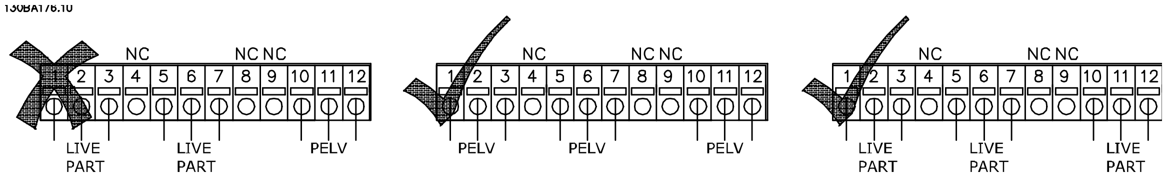
How to add the MCB 105 option:

- See the mounting instructions at the beginning of the section Options and Accessories.
- The power to the live part connections on relay terminals must be disconnected.
- Do not mix live parts (high voltage) with control signals (PELV).
- Select the relay functions in par. 5-40 *Function Relay* [6-8], par. 5-41 *On Delay, Relay* [6-8] and par. 5-42 *Off Delay, Relay* [6-8].

NB! (Index [6] is relay 7, index [7] is relay 8, and index [8] is relay 9)







Do not combine low voltage parts and PELV systems.

3

3.1.8 24 V Backup Option MCB 107 (Option D)

External 24 V DC Supply

An external 24 V DC supply can be installed for low-voltage supply to the control card and any option card installed. This enables full operation of the LCP (including the parameter setting) and serial communication busses without line power supplied to the power section.

External 24 V DC supply specification:	
Input voltage range	24 V DC ±15 % (max. 37 V in 10 s)
Max. input current	2.2 A
Average input current for the adjustable frequency drive	0.9 A
Max cable length	75 m
Input capacitance load	< 10 uF
Power-up delay	< 0.6 s

The inputs are protected.

Terminal numbers:

Terminal 35: - external 24 V DC supply.

Terminal 36: + external 24 V DC supply.

Follow these steps:

1. Remove the LCP or blind cover
2. Remove the Terminal Cover
3. Remove the cable de-coupling plate and the plastic cover underneath
4. Insert the 24 V DC backup external supply option in the option slot
5. Mount the cable de-coupling plate
6. Attach the terminal cover and the LCP or blind cover.

When MCB 107, 24 V backup option is supplying the control circuit, the internal 24 V supply is automatically disconnected.

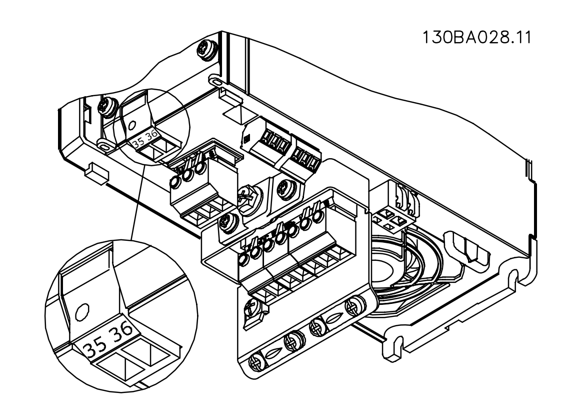


Figure 3.2: Connection to 24 V backup supplier (A2-A3).

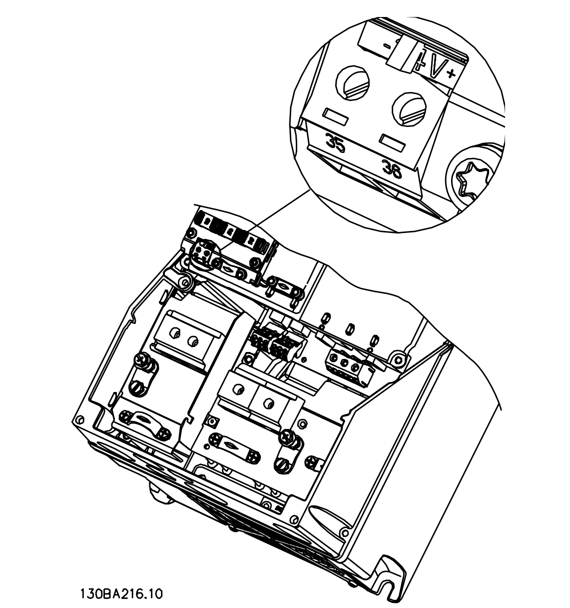


Figure 3.3: Connection to 24 V backup supplier (A5-C2).

3.1.9 Analog I/O option MCB 109

The analog I/O card is supposed to be used in e.g., the following cases:

- Providing battery back-up of clock function on control card
- As general extension of analog I/O selection available on control card, e.g., for multi-zone control with three pressure transmitters
- Turning the adjustable frequency drive into a de-central I/O block supporting a Building Management System with inputs for sensors and outputs for operating dampers and valve servos
- Support extended PID controllers with I/Os for setpoint inputs, transmitter/sensor inputs and outputs for servos.

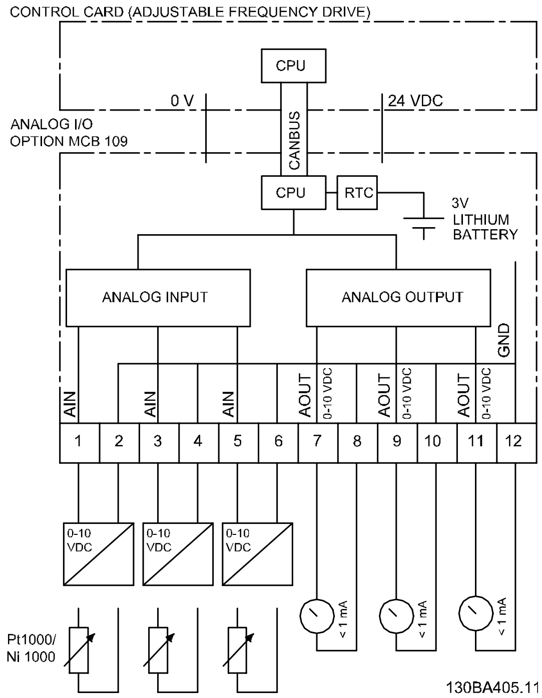


Figure 3.4: Principle diagram for analog I/O mounted in the adjustable frequency drive.

Analog I/O configuration

3 x analog inputs, capable of handling following:

- 0–10 VDC

OR

- 0–20 mA (voltage input 0–10 V) by mounting a 510Ω resistor across terminals (see NB!)
- 4–20 mA (voltage input 2–10 V) by mounting a 510Ω resistor across terminals (see NB)
- Ni1000 temperature sensor of 1000 Ω at 0° C. Specifications according to DIN43760
- Pt1000 temperature sensor of 1000 Ω at 32°F [0°C]. Specifications according to IEC 60751

3 x analog outputs supplying 0–10 V DC.

NOTE!
Please note the values available within the different standard groups of resistors:
E12: Closest standard value is 470Ω, creating an input of 449.9Ω and 8.997 V.
E24: Closest standard value is 510Ω, creating an input of 486.4Ω and 9.728 V.
E48: Closest standard value is 511Ω, creating an input of 487.3Ω and 9.746 V.
E96: Closest standard value is 523Ω, creating an input of 498.2Ω and 9.964 V.

Analog inputs - terminal X42/1-6
Parameter group for readout: 18-3*. See also VLT HVAC Drive *Programming Guide.*

Parameter groups for set-up: 26-0*, 26-1*, 26-2* and 26-3*. See also VLT HVAC Drive *Programming Guide.*

3 x analog inputs	Operating range	Resolution	Accuracy	Sampling	Max load	Impedance
Used as temperature sensor input	-58°–+302°F [-50°–+150°C]	11 bits	-58°F [-50°C] ±1 Kelvin 316°F [+150°C] ±2 Kelvin	3 Hz	-	-
Used as voltage input	0–10 VDC	10 bits	0.2% of full scale at cal. temperature	2.4 Hz	+/- 20 V continuously	Approximately 5 kΩ

When used for voltage, analog inputs are scalable by parameters for each input.

When used for temperature sensor, analog inputs scaling is preset to necessary signal level for specified temperature span.

When analog inputs are used for temperature sensors, it is possible to read out feedback value in both °C and °F.

When operating with temperature sensors, the maximum cable length to connect sensors is 262 ft [80 m] with non-shielded/non-twisted wires.

Analog outputs - terminal X42/7-12
Parameter group for readout and write: 18-3*. See also VLT HVAC Drive *Programming Guide*
Parameter groups for set-up: 26-4*, 26-5* and 26-6*. See also VLT HVAC Drive *Programming Guide*

3 x analog outputs	Output signal level	Resolution	Linearity	Max load
Volt	0–10 VDC	11 bits	1% of full scale	1 mA

Analog outputs are scalable by parameters for each output.

The function assigned is selectable via a parameter and has the same options as for analog outputs on the control card.

For a more detailed description of parameters, please refer to the VLT HVAC Drive *Programming Guide*.

Real-time clock (RTC) with back-up
The data format of RTC includes year, month, date, hour, minutes and weekday.

Accuracy of clock is better than ± 20 ppm at 77°F [25°C].

The built-in lithium backup battery lasts on average for minimum 10 years, when the adjustable frequency drive is operating at 104°F [40°C] ambient temperature. If the battery backup pack fails, the analog I/O option must be replaced.

3.1.10 Frame Size F Panel Options

Space Heaters and Thermostat

Mounted on the cabinet interior of frame size F adjustable frequency drives, space heaters controlled via automatic thermostat help control humidity inside the enclosure, extending the lifetime of drive components in damp environments. The thermostat default settings turn on the heaters at 10°C (50°F) and turn them off at 15.6°C (60°F).

Cabinet Light with Power Outlet

A light mounted on the cabinet interior of frame size F adjustable frequency drives increase visibility during servicing and maintenance. The housing light includes a power outlet for temporarily powering tools or other devices, available in two voltages:

- 230 V, 50 Hz, 2.5 A, CE/ENEC
- 120 V, 60 Hz, 5 A, UL/cUL

Transformer Tap Set-up

If the Cabinet Light & Outlet and/or the Space Heaters & Thermostat are installed Transformer T1 requires it taps to be set to the proper input voltage. A 380–480/500 V380–480 V drive will initially be set to the 525 V tap and a 525–690 V drive will be set to the 690 V tap to insure no overvoltage of secondary equipment occurs if the tap is not changed prior to power being applied. See the table below to set the proper tap at terminal T1 located in the rectifier cabinet. For location in the drive, see figure of rectifier in the *Power Connections* section.

Input Voltage Range	Tap to Select
380–440 V	400V
441–490 V	460V
491–550 V	525V
551–625 V	575V
626–660 V	660V
661–690 V	690V

NAMUR Terminals

NAMUR is an international association of automation technology users in process industries, primarily in the chemical and pharmaceutical industries, in Germany. Selection of this option provides terminals organized and labeled to the specifications of the NAMUR standard for drive input and output terminals. This requires MCB 112 PTC Thermistor Card and MCB 113 Extended Relay Card.

RCD (Residual Current Device)

Uses the core balance method to monitor ground fault currents in grounded and high-resistance grounded systems (TN and TT systems in IEC terminology). There is a pre-warning (50% of main alarm setpoint) and a main alarm setpoint. Associated with each setpoint is an SPDT alarm relay for external use. Requires an external "window-type" current transformer (supplied and installed by customer).

- Integrated into the drive's safe-stop circuit
- IEC 60755 Type B device monitors AC, pulsed DC, and pure DC ground fault currents
- LED bar graph indicator of the ground fault current level from 10–100% of the setpoint
- Fault memory
- TEST / RESET button

Insulation Resistance Monitor (IRM)

Monitors the insulation resistance in ungrounded systems (IT systems in IEC terminology) between the system phase conductors and ground. There is an ohmic pre-warning and a main alarm setpoint for the insulation level. Associated with each setpoint is an SPDT alarm relay for external use. Note: only one insulation resistance monitor can be connected to each ungrounded (IT) system.

- Integrated into the drive's safe-stop circuit
- LCD display of the ohmic value of the insulation resistance
- Fault Memory
- INFO, TEST, and RESET buttons

IEC Emergency Stop with Pilz Safety Relay

Includes a redundant 4-wire emergency stop pushbutton mounted on the front of the enclosure and a Pilz relay that monitors it in conjunction with the drive's safe stop circuit and the line power contactor located in the options cabinet.

Manual Motor Starters

Provide 3-phase power for electric blowers often required for larger motors. Power for the starters is provided from the load side of any supplied contactor, circuit breaker, or disconnect switch. Power is fused before each motor starter, and is off when the incoming power to the drive is off. Up to two starters are allowed (one if a 30 A, fuse-protected circuit is ordered). Integrated into the drive's safe-stop circuit.

Unit features include:

- Operation switch (on/off)
- Short-circuit and overload protection with test function
- Manual reset function

30 Ampere, Fuse-protected Terminals

- 3-phase power matching incoming AC line voltage for powering auxiliary customer equipment
- Not available if two manual motor starters are selected
- Terminals are off when the incoming power to the drive is off
- Power for the fused protected terminals will be provided from the load side of any supplied contactor, circuit breaker, or disconnect switch.

24 VDC Power Supply

- 5 amp, 120 W, 24 VDC
- Protected against output overcurrent, overload, short circuits, and overtemperature
- For powering customer-supplied accessory devices such as sensors, PLC I/O, contactors, temperature probes, LEDs, and/or other electronic hardware
- Diagnostics include a dry DC-ok contact, a green DC-ok LED, and a red overload LED

External Temperature Monitoring

Designed for monitoring temperatures of external system components, such as the motor windings and/or bearings. Includes eight universal input modules plus two dedicated thermistor input modules. All ten modules are integrated into the drive's safe stop circuit and can be monitored via a serial communication bus network (requires the purchase of a separate module/bus coupler).

Universal inputs (8)

Signal types:

- RTD inputs (including Pt100), 3-wire or 4-wire
- Thermocouple
- Analog current or analog voltage

Additional features:

- One universal output, configurable for analog voltage or analog current
- Two output relays (N.O.)
- Dual-line LC display and LED diagnostics
- Sensor lead wire break, short-circuit, and incorrect polarity detection
- Interface set-up software

Dedicated thermistor inputs (2)

Features:

- Each module is capable of monitoring up to six thermistors in a series
- Fault diagnostics for wire breakage or short-circuits of sensor leads
- ATEX/UL/CSA certification
- A third thermistor input can be provided by the PTC thermistor option card MCB 112, if necessary.

3.1.11 Brake Resistors

In applications where the motor is used as a brake, energy is generated in the motor and sent back into the adjustable frequency drive. If the energy cannot be transported back to the motor, it will increase the voltage in the drive DC line. In applications with frequent braking and/or high inertia loads, this increase may lead to an overvoltage trip in the drive, and ultimately, a shut down. Brake resistors are used to dissipate the excess energy resulting from the regenerative braking. The resistor is selected in respect to its ohmic value, its power dissipation rate and its physical size. Danfoss offers a wide variety of different resistors that are specially designed to our adjustable frequency drives. See the section *Control with brake function* for the dimensioning of brake resistors. Code numbers can be found in the section *How to order*.

3.1.12 Remote Mounting Kit for LCP

The LCP can be moved to the front of a cabinet by using the remote built-in kit. The enclosure is the IP65. The fastening screws must be tightened with a torque of max. 1 Nm.

Technical data	
Enclosure:	IP 65 front
Max. cable length between and unit:	3 m
Communication std:	RS 485

Ordering no. 130B1113

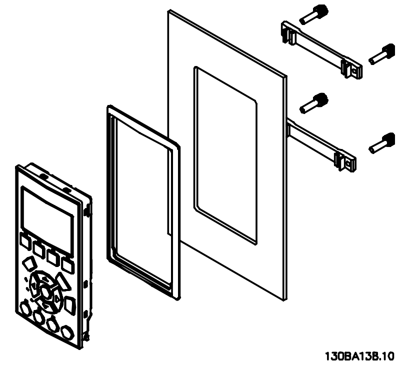


Figure 3.5: LCP kit with graphical LCP, fasteners, 9.8 ft [3 m] cable and gasket.

Ordering no. 130B1114

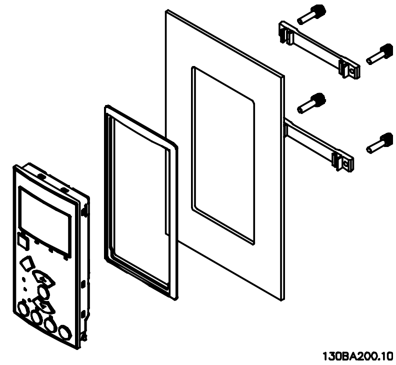
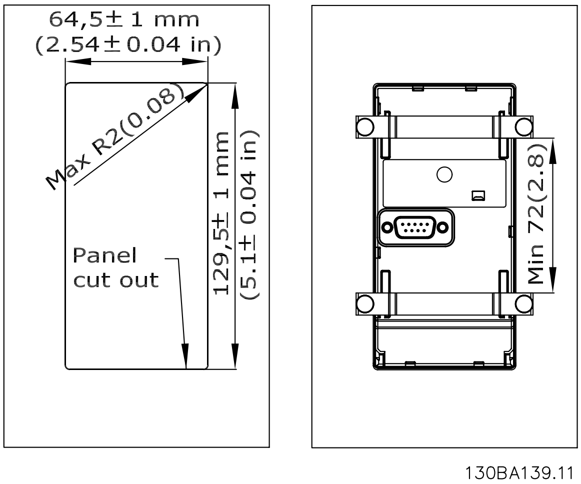


Figure 3.6: LCP kit with numerical LCP, fasteners and gasket.

LCP kit without an LCP is also available. Ordering number: 130B1117
For IP55 units, the ordering number is 130B1129.

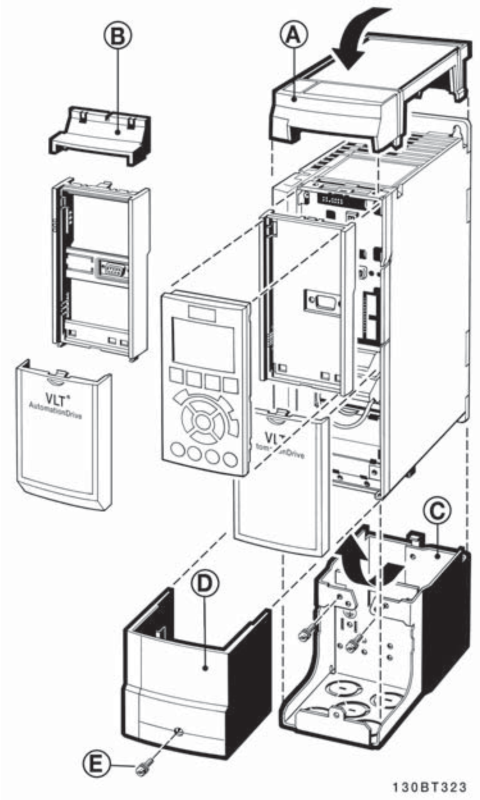


3.1.13 IP 21/IP 4X/ TYPE 1 Enclosure Kit

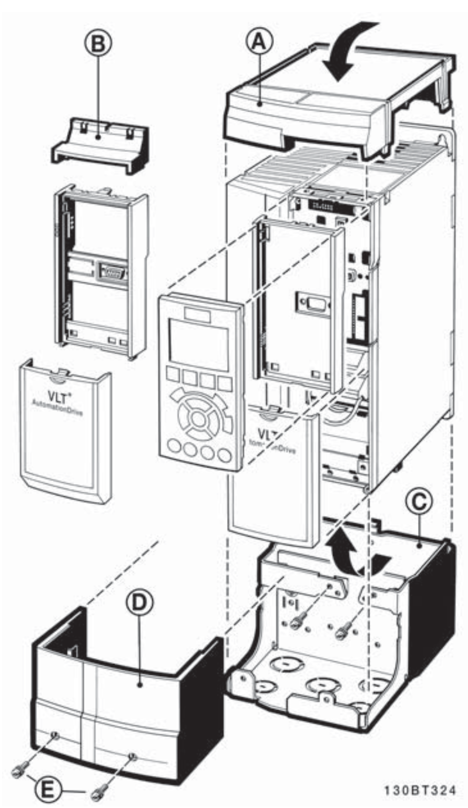
IP 21/IP 4X top/ TYPE 1 is an optional enclosure element available for IP 20 Compact units, enclosure size A2-A3, B3+B4 and C3+C4.
If the enclosure kit is used, an IP 20 unit is upgraded to comply with enclosure IP 21/ 4X top/TYPE 1.

The IP 4X top can be applied to all standard IP 20 VLT HVAC Drive variants.

A – Top cover
B – Brim
C – Base part
D – Base cover
E – Screw(s)
Place the top cover as shown. If an A or B option is used, the brim must be fitted to cover the top inlet. Place the base part C at the bottom of the drive and use the clamps from the accessory bag to correctly fasten the cables. Holes for cable connectors:
Size A2: 2x M25 and 3xM32
Size A3: 3xM25 and 3xM32



A2 Enclosure

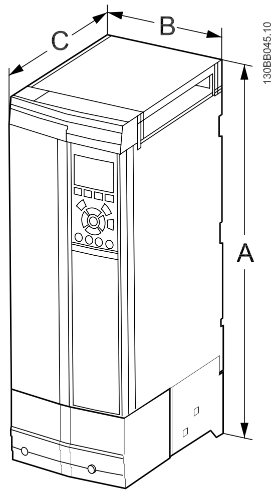


A3 Enclosure

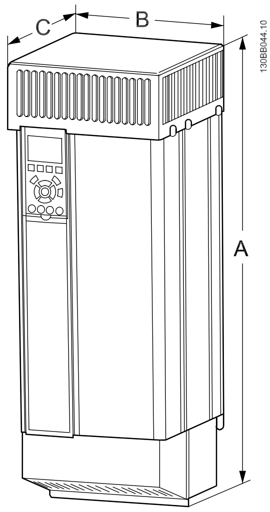
Dimensions

Enclosure type	Height (mm) A	Width (mm) B	Depth (mm) C*
A2	372	90	205
A3	372	130	205
B3	475	165	249
B4	670	255	246
C3	755	329	337
C4	950	391	337

* If option A/B is used, the depth will increase (see section Mechanical Dimensions for details)

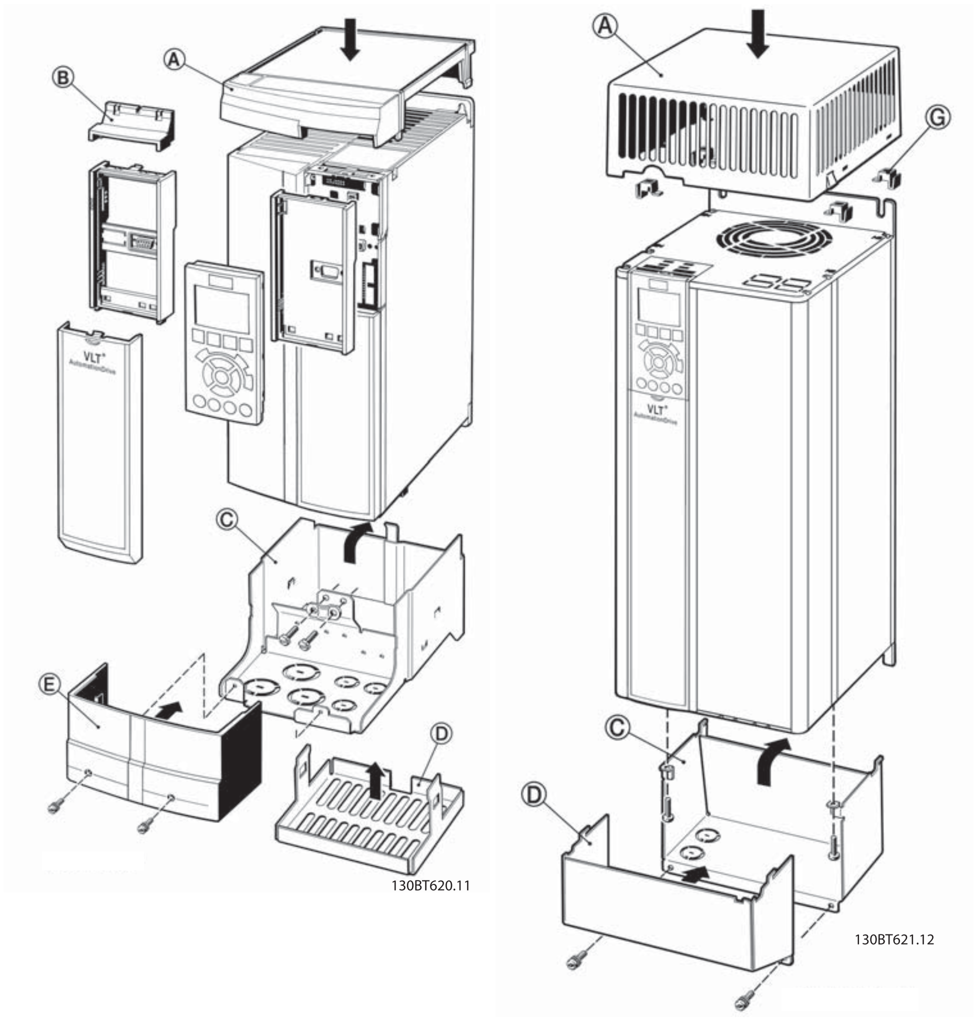


A2, A3, B3



B4, C3, C4

A – Top cover
B – Brim
C – Base part
D – Base cover
E – Screw(s)
F - Fan cover
G - Top clip
When option module A and/ or option module B is/are used, the brim (B) must be fitted to the top cover (A).



B3 EnclosureUnit Size 23 | B4 - C3 - C4 EnclosureUnit Sizes, 24, 33, 34

Side-by-side installation is not possible when using the *IP 21/ IP 4X/ TYPE 1 Enclosure Kit*

3.1.14 Output Filters

The high speed switching of the adjustable frequency drive produces some secondary effects, which influence the motor and the enclosed environment. These side effects are addressed by two different filter types, the du/dt and the sine-wave filter.

du/dt filters

Motor insulation stresses are often caused by the combination of rapid voltage and current increase. The rapid energy changes can also be reflected back to the DC line in the inverter and cause shut down. The du/dt filter is designed to reduce the voltage rise time/the rapid energy change in the motor, and by that intervention, it prevents premature aging and flashover in the motor insulation. The du/dt filters have a positive influence on the radiation of magnetic noise in the cable that connects the drive to the motor. The voltage wave form is still pulse-shaped but the du/dt ratio is reduced in comparison with the installation without filter.

Sine-wave filters

Sine-wave filters are designed to allow only low frequencies to pass. High frequencies are consequently shunted away, which results in a sinusoidal phase-to-phase voltage waveform and sinusoidal current waveforms.

With the sinusoidal waveforms, the use of special adjustable frequency drive motors with reinforced insulation is no longer needed. The acoustic noise from the motor is also damped as a consequence of the wave condition.

Besides the features of the du/dt filter, the sine-wave filter also reduces insulation stress and bearing currents in the motor, thus leading to prolonged motor lifetime and longer periods between service. Sine-wave filters enable use of longer motor cables in applications where the motor is installed far from the drive. The length is unfortunately limited because the filter does not reduce leakage currents in the cables.

4 How to Order

4.1.1 Drive Configurator

It is possible to design a adjustable frequency drive according to the application requirements by using the ordering number system.

For the adjustable frequency drive, you can order standard drives and drives with integral options by sending a type code string describing the product a to the local Danfoss sales office, i.e.,

FC-102P18KT4E21H1XGCXXXSXXXXAGBKCXXXXDX

The meaning of the characters in the string can be located in the pages containing the ordering numbers in the chapter *How to Select Your VLT*. In the example above, a Profibus LON works option and a general purpose I/O option is included in the adjustable frequency drive.

Ordering numbers for adjustable frequency drive standard variants can also be located in the chapter *How to Select Your VLT*.

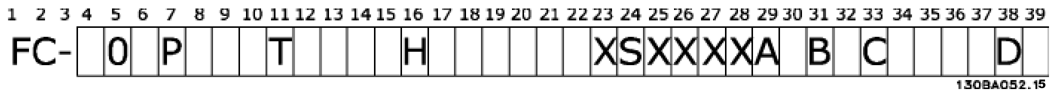
From the Internet-based drive configurator, you can configure the right adjustable frequency drive for the right application and generate the type code string. The drive configurator will automatically generate an eight-digit sales number to be delivered to your local sales office.
Furthermore, you can establish a project list with several products and send it to a Danfoss sales representative.

The drive configurator can be found on the global Internet site: www.danfoss.com/drives.

Example of Drive Configurator interface set-up:
The numbers shown in the boxes refer to the letter/figure number of the type code string; read from left to right. See next page!

Product groups	1-3	
Adjustable frequency drive series	4-6	
Power rating	8-10	
Phases	11	
AC Line Voltage	12	
Enclosure	13-15	
Enclosure type		
Enclosure class		
Control supply voltage		
Hardware configuration		
RFI filter	16-17	
Brake	18	
Display (LCP)	19	
Coating PCB	20	
Line power option	21	
Adaptation A	22	
Adaptation B	23	
Software release	24-27	
Software language	28	
A options	29-30	
B options	31-32	
C0 options, MCO	33-34	
C1 options	**35**	
C option software	**36-37**	
D options	**38-39**	

4.1.2 Type Code String low and medium power



Description	Pos	Possible choice
Product group & Adjustable Frequency Drive Series	1-6	FC 102
Power rating	8-10	1.5–125 hp [1.1–90 kW] (P1K1 - P90K)
Number of phases	11	Three phases (T)
AC line voltage	11-12	T 2: 200–240 V AC T 4: 380–480 V AC T 6: 525–600 V AC
Enclosure	13-15	E20: IP20 E21: IP 21/NEMA Type 1 E55: IP 55/NEMA Type 12 E66: IP66 P21: IP21/NEMA Type 1 w/ backplate P55: IP55/NEMA Type 12 w/ backplate
RFI filter	16-17	H1: RFI filter class A1/B H2: RFI filter class A2 H3: RFI filter class A1/B (reduced cable length) Hx: No RFI filter
Brake	18	X: No brake chopper included B: Brake chopper included T: Safe Stop U: Safe + brake
Display	19	G: Graphical Local Control Panel (GLCP) N: Numeric Local Control Panel (NLCP) X: No Local Control Panel
Coating PCB	20	X. No coated PCB C: Coated PCB
Line power option	21	X: No Line power disconnect switch and Load Sharing 1: With Line power disconnect switch (IP55 only) 8: Line power disconnect and Load Sharing D: Load Sharing See Chapter 8 for max. cable sizes.
Adaptation	22	X: Standard 0: European metric thread in cable entries.
Adaptation	23	Reserved
Software release	24-27	Current software
Software language	28	

Table 4.1: Type code description.

Description	Pos	Possible choice
A options	29-30	AX: No options A0: MCA 101 Profibus DP V1 A4: MCA 104 DeviceNet AG: MCA 108 Lonworks AJ: MCA 109 BACnet gateway
B options	31-32	BX: No option BK: MCB 101 General purpose I/O option BP: MCB 105 Relay option BO: MCB 109 Analog I/O option
C0 options MCO	33-34	CX: No options
C1 options	35	X: No options
C option software	36-37	XX: Standard software
D options	38-39	DX: No option D0: DC backup

Table 4.2: Type code description.

The various options and accessories are described further in the *VLT HVAC Drive Design Guide, MG.11.BX.YY*.

4.1.3 Type Code String High Power

Ordering type code frame sizes D and E

Description	Pos	Possible choice
Product group+series	1-6	FC 102
Power rating	8-10	60–750 hp [45–560 kW]
Phases	11	Three phases (T)
AC line voltage	11-12	T 4: 380–500 V AC T 7: 525–690 V AC
Enclosure	13-15	E00: IP00/Chassis C00: IP00/Chassis w/ stainless steel back channel E0D: IP00/Chassis, D3 P37K-P75K, T7 C0D: IP00/Chassis w/ stainless steel back channel, D3 P37K-P75K, T7 E21: IP 21/ NEMA Type 1 E54: IP 54/ NEMA Type 12 E2D: IP 21/ NEMA Type 1, D1 P37K-P75K, T7 E5D: IP 54/ NEMA Type 12, D1 P37K-P75K, T7 E2M: IP 21/ NEMA Type 1 with line power shield E5M: IP 54/ NEMA Type 12 with line power shield
RFI filter	16-17	H2: RFI filter, class A2 (standard) H4: RFI filter class A1[1)] H6: RFI filter, maritime use2)
Brake	18	B: Brake IGBT mounted X: No brake IGBT R: Regeneration terminals (E frames only)
Display	19	G: Graphical Local Control Panel LCP N: Numerical Local Control Panel (LCP) X: No Local Control Panel (D frames IP00 and IP 21 only)
Coating PCB	20	C: Coated PCB X. No coated PCB (D frames 380–480/500 V only)
Line power option	21	X: No AC line power option 3: Line power disconnect and fuse 5: Line power disconnect, fuse and load sharing 7: Fuse A: Fuse and load sharing D: Load sharing
Adaptation	22	Reserved
Adaptation	23	Reserved
Software release	24-27	Current software
Software language	28	
A options	29-30	AX: No options A0: MCA 101 Profibus DP V1 A4: MCA 104 DeviceNet
B options	31-32	BX: No option BK: MCB 101 General purpose I/O option BP: MCB 105 Relay option BO: MCB 109 Analog I/O option
C_0 options	33-34	CX: No options
C1 options	35	X: No options
C option software	36-37	XX: Standard software
D options	38-39	DX: No option D0: DC backup

The various options are described further in this Design Guide.
1): Available for all D frames. E frames 380–480/500 V AC only
2) Consult factory for applications requiring maritime certification

4

Ordering type code frame size Funit size 5x

Description	Pos	Possible choice
Product group	1-3	
Drive series	4-6	
Power rating	8-10	675–1875 hp [500–1400 kW]
Phases	11	Three phases (T)
AC line voltage	11- 12	T 5: 380–500 V AC T 7: 525–690 V AC
EnclosureUnit Size	13- 15	E21: IP 21/ NEMA Type 1 E54: IP 54/ NEMA Type 12 L2X: IP21/NEMA 1 with cabinet light & IEC 230 V power outlet L5X: IP54/NEMA 12 with cabinet light & IEC 230 V power outlet L2A: IP21/NEMA 1 with cabinet light & NAM 115 V power outlet L5A: IP54/NEMA 12 with cabinet light & NAM 115 V power outlet H21: IP21 with space heater and thermostat H54: IP54 with space heater and thermostat R2X: IP21/NEMA1 with space heater, thermostat, light & IEC 230 V outlet R5X: IP54/NEMA12 with space heater, thermostat, light & IEC 230 V outlet R2A: IP21/NEMA1 with space heater, thermostat, light, & NAM 115 V outlet R5A: IP54/NEMA12 with space heater, thermostat, light, & NAM 115 V outlet
RFI filter	16- 17	H2: RFI filter, class A2 (standard) H4: RFI filter, class A1[2, 3] HE: RCD with Class A2 RFI filter[2] HF: RCD with class A1 RFI filter[2, 3] HG: IRM with Class A2 RFI filter[2] HH: IRM with class A1 RFI filter[2, 3] HJ: NAMUR terminals and class A2 RFI filter[1] HK: NAMUR terminals with class A1 RFI filter[1, 2, 3] HL: RCD with NAMUR terminals and class A2 RFI filter[1, 2] HM: RCD with NAMUR terminals and class A1 RFI filter[1, 2, 3] HN: IRM with NAMUR terminals and class A2 RFI filter[1, 2] HP: IRM with NAMUR terminals and class A1 RFI filter[1, 2, 3]
Brake	18	B: Brake IGBT mounted X: No brake IGBT R: Regeneration terminals M: IEC Emergency stop push-button (with Pilz safety relay)[4] N: IEC Emergency stop push-button with brake IGBT and brake terminals [4] P: IEC Emergency stop push-button with regeneration terminals[4]
Display	19	G: Graphical Local Control Panel LCP
Coating PCB	20	C: Coated PCB
Line power option	21	X: No AC line power option 3[2]: Line power disconnect and fuse 5[2]: Line power disconnect, fuse and load sharing 7: Fuse A: Fuse and load sharing D: Load sharing E: Line power disconnect, contactor & fuses2) F: Line power circuit breaker, contactor & fuses 2) G: Line power disconnect, contactor, load sharing terminals & fuses2) H: Line power circuit breaker, contactor, load sharing terminals & fuses2) J: Line power circuit breaker & fuses 2) K: Line power circuit breaker, load sharing terminals & fuses 2)
A options	29-30	AX: No options A0: MCA 101 Profibus DP V1 A4: MCA 104 DeviceNet AN: MCA 121 Ethernet IP
B options	31-32	BX: No option BK: MCB 101 General purpose I/O option BP: MCB 105 Relay option BO: MCB 109 Analog I/O option
C_0 options	33-34	CX: No options
C1 options	35	X: No options
C option software	36-37	XX: Standard software
D options	38-39	DX: No option D0: DC backup
The various options are described further in this Design Guide.		

4.2 Ordering Numbers

4.2.1 Ordering Numbers: Options and Accessories

Type	Description	Ordering no.	Comments
Miscellaneous hardware I			
DC link connector	Terminal block for DC link connection on A2/A3	130B1064	
IP 21/4X top/TYPE 1 kit	IP21/NEMA1 Top + bottomA2	130B1122	
IP 21/4X top/TYPE 1 kit	IP21/NEMA1 Top + bottomA3	130B1123	
IP 21/4X top/TYPE 1 kit	IP21/NEMA1 Top + bottom B3	130B1187	
IP 21/4X top/TYPE 1 kit	IP21/NEMA1 Top + bottom B4	130B1189	
IP 21/4X top/TYPE 1 kit	IP21/NEMA1 Top + bottom C3	130B1191	
IP 21/4X top/TYPE 1 kit	IP21/NEMA1 Top + bottom C4	130B1193	
IP21/4X top	IP21 Top Cover A2	130B1132	
IP21/4X top	IP21 Top Cover A3	130B1133	
IP 21/4X top	IP21 Top Cover B3	130B1188	
IP 21/4X top	IP21 Top Cover B4	130B1190	
IP 21/4X top	IP21 Top Cover C3	130B1192	
IP 21/4X top	IP21 Top Cover C4	130B1194	
Panel Through Mount Kit	Enclosure, frame size A5	130B1028	
Panel Through Mount Kit	Enclosure, frame size B1	130B1046	
Panel Through Mount Kit	Enclosure, frame size B2	130B1047	
Panel Through Mount Kit	Enclosure, frame size C1	130B1048	
Panel Through Mount Kit	Enclosure, frame size C2	130B1049	
Profibus D-Sub 9	Connector kit for IP 20	130B1112	
Profibus top entry kit	Top entry kit for Profibus connection - D + E enclosures	176F1742	
Terminal blocks	Screw terminal blocks for replacing spring loaded terminals 1 x 10-pin, 1 x 6-pin and 1 x 3-pin connectors	130B1116	
Backplate	A5 IP55 / NEMA 12	130B1098	
Backplate	B1 IP21 / IP55 / NEMA 12	130B3383	
Backplate	B2 IP21 / IP55 / NEMA 12	130B3397	
Backplate	C1 IP21 / IP55 / NEMA 12	130B3910	
Backplate	C2 IP21 / IP55 / NEMA 12	130B3911	
Backplate	A5 IP66	130B3242	
Backplate	B1 IP66	130B3434	
Backplate	B2 IP66	130B3465	
Backplate	C1 IP66	130B3468	
Backplate	C2 IP66	130B3491	
LCP's and kits			
LCP 101	Numerical Local Control Panel (NLCP)	130B1124	
LCP 102	Graphical Local Control Panel (GLCP)	130B1107	
LCP cable	Separate LCP cable, 9.8 ft [3 m]	175Z0929	
LCPkit	Panel mounting kit including graphical LCP, fasteners, 9.8 ft [3 m] cable and gasket	130B1113	
LCP kit	Panel mounting kit including numerical LCP, fasteners and gasket	130B1114	
LCPkit	Panel mounting kit for all LCPs including fasteners, 9.8 ft [3 m] cable and gasket	130B1117	
LCPkit	Front mounting kit, IP55 enclosures	130B1129	
LCPkit	Panel mounting kit for all LCPs including fasteners and gasket - without cable	130B1170	

Table 4.3: Options can be ordered as factory built-in options, see ordering information.

Type	Description	Comments
Options for Slot A		**Ordering no. Coated**
MCA 101	Profibus option DP V0/V1	130B1200
MCA 104	DeviceNet option	130B1202
MCA 108	Lonworks	130B1206
MCA 109	BACnet gateway for built-in. Not to be used with the relay option MCB 105 card	130B1244
Options for Slot B		
MCB 101	General purpose Input Output option	
MCB 105	Relay option	
MCB 109	Analog I/O option and battery backup for real-time clock	130B1243
Option for Slot D		
MCB 107	24 V DC back-up	130B1208
External Options		
Ethernet IP	Ethernet master	

For information on serial communication bus and application option compatibility with older software versions, please contact your Danfoss supplier.

Type	Description		
Spare Parts		**Ordering no.**	**Comments**
Control board adjustable frequency drive	With Safe Stop Function	130B1150	
Control board adjustable frequency drive	Without Safe Stop Function	130B1151	
Fan A2	Fan, frame size A2	130B1009	
Fan A3	Fan, frame size A3	130B1010	
Fan A5	Fan, frame size A5	130B1017	
Fan B1	Fan external, frame size B1	130B3407	
Fan B2	Fan external, frame size B2	130B3406	
Fan B3	Fan external, frame size B3	130B3563	
Fan B4	Fan external, 25–30 hp [18.5/22 kW]	130B3699	
Fan B4	Fan external 30–40 hp [22/30 kW]	130B3701	
Fan C1	Fan external, frame size C1	130B3865	
Fan C2	Fan external, frame size C2	130B3867	
Fan C3	Fan external, frame size C3	130B4292	
Fan C4	Fan external, frame size C4	130B4294	
Miscellaneous hardware II			
Accessory bag A2	Accessory bag, frame size A2	130B1022	
Accessory bag A3	Accessory bag, frame size A3	130B1022	
Accessory bag A5	Accessory bag, frame size A5	130B1023	
Accessory bag B1	Accessory bag, frame size B1	130B2060	
Accessory bag B2	Accessory bag, frame size B2	130B2061	
Accessory bag B3	Accessory bag, frame size B3	130B0980	
Accessory bag B4	Accessory bag, frame size B4	130B1300	Small
Accessory bag B4	Accessory bag, frame size B4	130B1301	Big
Accessory bag C1	Accessory bag, frame size C1	130B0046	
Accessory bag C2	Accessory bag, frame size C2	130B0047	
Accessory bag C3	Accessory bag, frame size C3	130B0981	
Accessory bag C4	Accessory bag, frame size C4	130B0982	Small
Accessory bag C4	Accessory bag, frame size C4	130B0983	Big

4

4.2.2 Ordering Numbers: High Power Option Kits

Kit	Description	Ordering Number	Instruction Number
NEMA-3R (Rittal Enclosures)	D3 Frame	176F4600	175R5922
	D4 Frame	176F4601	
	E2 Frame	176F1852	
NEMA-3R (Welded Enclosures)	D3 Frame	176F0296	175R1068
	D4 Frame	176F0295	
	E2 Frame	176F0298	
Pedestal	D Frames	176F1827	175R5642
Backchannel Duct Kit	D3 5.9 ft [1800 mm]	176F1824	175R5640
(Top & Bottom)	D4 5.9 ft [1800 mm]	176F1823	
	D3 78.7 in [2000 mm]	176F1826	
	D4 78.7 in [2000 mm]	176F1825	
	E2 78.7 in [2000 mm]	176F1850	
	E2 7.2 ft [2200 mm]	176F0299	
Backchannel Duct Kit	D3/D4 Frames	176F1775	175R1107
(Top Only)	E2 Frame	176F1776	
IP00 Top & Bottom Covers	D3/D4 Frames	176F1862	175R1106
(Welded Enclosures)	E2 Frame	176F1861	
IP00 Top & Bottom Covers	D3 Frames	176F1781	175R0076
(Rittal Enclosures)	D4 Frames	176F1782	
	E2 Frame	176F1783	
IP00 Motor Cable Clamp	D3 Frame	176F1774	175R1109
	D4 Frame	176F1746	
	E2 Frame	176F1745	
IP00 Terminal Cover	D3/D4 Frame	176F1779	175R1108
line Power Shield	D1/D2 Frames	176F0799	175R5923
	E1 Frame	176F1851	
Input Plates	See Instr		175R5795
Loadshare	D1/D3 Frame	176F8456	175R5637
	D2/D4 Frame	176F8455	
Top Entry Sub D or Shield Termination	D3/D4/E2 Frames	176F1742	175R5964

4.2.3 Ordering Numbers: Harmonic Filters

Harmonic filters are used to reduce line harmonics.

- AHF 010: 10% current distortion
- AHF 005: 5% current distortion

380–415 VAC, 50 Hz

$I_{AHF,N}$ [A]	Typical Motor Used [kW]	Danfoss ordering number		Adjustable frequency drive size
		AHF 005	AHF 010	
10	1.1–4	175G6600	175G6622	P1K1, P4K0
19	5.5–7.5	175G6601	175G6623	P5K5 - P7K5
26	11	175G6602	175G6624	P11K
35	15–18.5	175G6603	175G6625	P15K - P18K
43	22	175G6604	175G6626	P22K
72	30 - 37	175G6605	175G6627	P30K - P37K
101	45 - 55	175G6606	175G6628	P45K - P55K
144	75	175G6607	175G6629	P75K
180	90	175G6608	175G6630	P90K
217	110	175G6609	175G6631	P110
289	132	175G6610	175G6632	P132 - P160
324	160	175G6611	175G6633	
370	200	175G6688	175G6691	P200
506	250	175G6609 + 175G6610	175G6631 + 175G6632	P250
578	315	2x 175G6610	2x 175G6632	P315
648	355	2x175G6611	2x175G6633	P355
694	400	175G6611 + 175G6688	175G6633 + 175G6691	P400
740	450	2x175G6688	2x175G6691	P450

380–415 V AC, 60 Hz

$I_{AHF,N}$ [A]	Typical Motor Used [HP]	Danfoss ordering number		Adjustable frequency drive size
		AHF 005	AHF 010	
10	1.1–4	130B2540	130B2541	P1K1 - P4K0
19	5.5–7.5	130B2460	130B2472	P5K5 - P7K5
26	11	130B2461	130B2473	P11K
35	15–18.5	130B2462	130B2474	P15K, P18K
43	22	130B2463	130B2475	P22K
72	30 - 37	130B2464	130B2476	P30K - P37K
101	45 - 55	130B2465	130B2477	P45K - P55K
144	75	130B2466	130B2478	P75K
180	90	130B2467	130B2479	P90K
217	110	130B2468	130B2480	P110
289	132	130B2469	130B2481	P132
324	160	130B2470	130B2482	P160
370	200	130B2471	130B2483	P200
506	250	130B2468 + 130B2469	130B2480 + 130B2481	P250
578	315	2x 130B2469	2x 130B2481	P315
648	355	2x130B2470	2x130B2482	P355
694	400	130B2470 + 130B2471	130B2482 + 130B2483	P400
740	450	2x130B2471	130B2483	P450

440–480 V AC, 60 Hz

$I_{AHF,N}$ [A]	Typical Motor Used [HP]	Danfoss ordering number		Adjustable frequency drive size
		AHF 005	AHF 010	
10	1.5–7.5	130B2538	130B2539	P1K1 - P5K5
19	10 - 15	175G6612	175G6634	P7K5 - P11K
26	20	175G6613	175G6635	P15K
35	25 - 30	175G6614	175G6636	P18K - P22K
43	40	175G6615	175G6637	P30K
72	50 - 60	175G6616	175G6638	P37K - P45K
101	75	175G6617	175G6639	P55K
144	100 - 125	175G6618	175G6640	P75K - P90K
180	150	175G6619	175G6641	P110
217	200	175G6620	175G6642	P132
289	250	175G6621	175G6643	P160
370	350	175G6690	175G6693	P200
434	350	2x175G6620	2x175G6642	P250
506	450	175G6620 + 175G6621	175G6642 + 175G6643	P315
578	500	2x 175G6621	2x 175G6643	P355
648	550-600	2x175G6689	2x175G6692	P400
694	600	175G6689 + 175G6690	175G6692 + 175G6693	P450
740	650	2x175G6690	2x175G6693	P500

Matching the adjustable frequency drive and filter is pre-calculated based on 400 V/480 V, a typical motor load (4-pole) and 110% torque.

500–525 V AC, 50 Hz

$I_{AHF,N}$ [A]	Typical Motor Used [kW]	Danfoss ordering number		Adjustable frequency drive size
		AHF 005	AHF 010	
10	1.1–7.5	175G6644	175G6656	P1K1 - P7K5
19	11	175G6645	175G6657	P11K
26	15–18.5	175G6646	175G6658	P15K - P18K
35	22	175G6647	175G6659	P22K
43	30	175G6648	175G6660	P30K
72	37 -45	175G6649	175G6661	P45K - P55K
101	55	175G6650	175G6662	P75K
144	75 - 90	175G6651	175G6663	P90K - P110
180	110	175G6652	175G6664	P132
217	132	175G6653	175G6665	P160
289	160 - 200	175G6654	175G6666	P200 - P250
324	250	175G6655	175G6667	P315
397	315	175G6652 + 175G6653	175G6641 + 175G6665	P400
434	355	2x175G6653	2x175G6665	P450
506	400	175G6653 + 175G6654	175G6665 + 175G6666	P500
578	450	2X 175G6654	2X 175G6666	P560
613	500	175G6654 + 175G6655	175G6666 + 175G6667	P630

690 V AC, 50 Hz

$I_{AHF,N}$ [A]	Typical Motor Used [kW]	Danfoss ordering number		Adjustable frequency drive size
		AHF 005	AHF 010	
43	45	130B2328	130B2293	
72	45 - 55	130B2330	130B2295	P37K - P45K
101	75 - 90	130B2331	130B2296	P55K - P75K
144	110	130B2333	130B2298	P90K - P110
180	132	130B2334	130B2299	P132
217	160	130B2335	130B2300	P160
288	200 - 250	2x130B2333	130B2301	P200 - P250
324	315	130B2334 + 130B2335	130B2302	P315
397	400	130B2334 + 130B2335	130B2299 + 130B2300	P400
434	450	2x130B2335	2x130B2300	P450
505	500	*	130B2300 + 130B2301	P500
576	560	*	2x130B2301	P560
612	630	*	130B2301 + 130B2300	P630
730	710	*	2x130B2302	P710

Table 4.4: * For higher currents, please contact Danfoss.

4.2.4 Ordering Numbers: Sine Wave Filter Modules, 200–500 V AC

Line power supply 3 x 200 to 480 [VAC]

Adjustable frequency drive size			Minimum switching frequency [kHz]	Maximum output frequency [Hz]	Part No. IP20	Part No. IP00	Rated filter current at 50 Hz [A]
200–240 [VAC]	**380–440 [VAC]**	**440–480 [VAC]**					
	P1K1	P1K1	5	120	130B2441	130B2406	4.5
	P1K5	P1K5	5	120	130B2441	130B2406	4.5
	P2K2	P2K2	5	120	130B2443	130B2408	8
P1K5	P3K0	P3K0	5	120	130B2443	130B2408	8
	P4K0	P4K0	5	120	130B2444	130B2409	10
P2K2	P5K5	P5K5	5	120	130B2446	130B2411	17
P3K0	P7K5	P7K5	5	120	130B2446	130B2411	17
P4K0			5	120	130B2446	130B2411	17
P5K5	P11K	P11K	4	100	130B2447	130B2412	24
P7K5	P15K	P15K	4	100	130B2448	130B2413	38
	P18K	P18K	4	100	130B2448	130B2413	38
P11K	P22K	P22K	4	100	130B2307	130B2281	48
P15K	P30K	P30K	3	100	130B2308	130B2282	62
P18K	P37K	P37K	3	100	130B2309	130B2283	75
P22K	P45K	P55K	3	100	130B2310	130B2284	115
P30K	P55K	P75K	3	100	130B2310	130B2284	115
P37K	P75K	P90K	3	100	130B2311	130B2285	180
P45K	P90K	P110	3	100	130B2311	130B2285	180
	P110	P132	3	100	130B2312	130B2286	260
	P132	P160	3	100	130B2313	130B2287	260
	P160	P200	3	100	130B2313	130B2287	410
	P200	P250	3	100	130B2314	130B2288	410
	P250	P315	3	100	130B2314	130B2288	480
	P315	P315	2	100	130B2315	130B2289	660
	P355	P355	2	100	130B2315	130B2289	660
	P400	P400	2	100	130B2316	130B2290	750
		P450	2	100	130B2316	130B2290	750
	P450	P500	2	100	130B2317	130B2291	880
	P500	P560	2	100	130B2317	130B2291	880
	P560	P630	2	100	130B2318	130B2292	1200
	P630	P710	2	100	130B2318	130B2292	1200
	P710	P800	2	100	2x130B2317	2x130B2291	1500
	P800	P1M0	2	100	2x130B2317	2x130B2291	1500
	P1M0		2	100	2x130B2318	2x130B2292	1700

When using sine-wave filters, the switching frequency should comply with filter specifications in par. 14-01 *Switching Frequency*.

NOTE!
See also Output Filter Design Guide, MG.90.Nx.yy

4

4.2.5 Ordering Numbers: Sine-wave Filter Modules, 525–600/690 V AC

Line power supply 3 x 525 to 690 [VAC]

Adjustable frequency drive size		Minimum switching frequency [kHz]	Maximum output frequency [Hz]	Part No. IP20	Part No. IP00	Rated filter current at 50 Hz [A]
525–600 [VAC]	**-690 [VAC]**					
P1K1		2	100	130B2341	130B2321	13
P1K5		2	100	130B2341	130B2321	13
P2k2		2	100	130B2341	130B2321	13
P3K0		2	100	130B2341	130B2321	13
P4K0		2	100	130B2341	130B2321	13
P5K5		2	100	130B2341	130B2321	13
P7K5		2	100	130B2341	130B2321	13
P11K		2	100	130B2342	130B2322	28
P15K		2	100	130B2342	130B2322	28
P18K		2	100	130B2342	130B2322	28
P22K		2	100	130B2342	130B2322	28
P30K		2	100	130B2343	130B2323	45
P37K	P45K	2	100	130B2344	130B2324	76
P45K	P55K	2	100	130B2344	130B2324	76
P55K	P75K	2	100	130B2345	130B2325	115
P75K	P90K	2	100	130B2345	130B2325	115
P90K	P110	2	100	130B2346	130B2326	165
	P132	2	100	130B2346	130B2326	165
	P160	2	100	130B2347	130B2327	260
	P200	2	100	130B2347	130B2327	260
	P250	2	100	130B2348	130B2329	303
	P315	2	100	130B2370	130B2341	430
	P355	1.5	100	130B2370	130B2341	430
	P400	1.5	100	130B2370	130B2341	430
	P450	1.5	100	130B2371	130B2342	530
	P500	1.5	100	130B2371	130B2342	530
	P560	1.5	100	130B2381	130B2337	660
	P630	1.5	100	130B2381	130B2337	660
	P710	1.5	100	130B2382	130B2338	765
	P800	1.5	100	130B2383	130B2339	940
	P900	1.5	100	130B2383	130B2339	940
	P1M0	1.5	100	130B2384	130B2340	1320
	P1M2	1.5	100	130B2384	130B2340	1320
	P1M4	1.5	100	2x130B2382	2x130B2338	1479

NOTE!

When using sine-wave filters, the switching frequency should comply with filter specifications in par. 14-01 *Switching Frequency*.

NOTE!

See also Output Filter Design Guide, MG.90.Nx.yy

4.2.6 Ordering Numbers: du/dt Filters, 380–480 VAC

Line power supply 3x380 to 3x480 V AC

Adjustable frequency drive size		Minimum switching frequency [kHz]	Maximum output frequency [Hz]	Part No. IP20	Part No. IP00	Rated filter current at 50 Hz [A]
380–439 [VAC]	**440–480 [VAC]**					
P11K	P11K	4	100	130B2396	130B2385	24
P15K	P15K	4	100	130B2397	130B2386	45
P18K	P18K	4	100	130B2397	130B2386	45
P22K	P22K	4	100	130B2397	130B2386	45
P30K	P30K	3	100	130B2398	130B2387	75
P37K	P37K	3	100	130B2398	130B2387	75
P45K	P45K	3	100	130B2399	130B2388	110
P55K	P55K	3	100	130B2399	130B2388	110
P75K	P75K	3	100	130B2400	130B2389	182
P90K	P90K	3	100	130B2400	130B2389	182
P110	P110	3	100	130B2401	130B2390	280
P132	P132	3	100	130B2401	130B2390	280
P160	P160	3	100	130B2402	130B2391	400
P200	P200	3	100	130B2402	130B2391	400
P250	P250	3	100	130B2277	130B2275	500
P315	P315	2	100	130B2278	130B2276	750
P355	P355	2	100	130B2278	130B2276	750
P400	P400	2	100	130B2278	130B2276	750
	P450	2	100	130B2278	130B2276	750
P450	P500	2	100	130B2405	130B2393	910
P500	P560	2	100	130B2405	130B2393	910
P560	P630	2	100	130B2407	130B2394	1500
P630	P710	2	100	130B2407	130B2394	1500
P710	P800	2	100	130B2407	130B2394	1500
P800	P1M0	2	100	130B2407	130B2394	1500
P1M0		2	100	130B2410	130B2395	2300

NOTE!
See also Output Filter Design Guide, MG.90.Nx.yy

4

4.2.7 Ordering Numbers: du/dt Filters, 525–600/690 V AC

Line power supply 3x525 to 3x690 V AC

Adjustable frequency drive size		Minimum switching frequency [kHz]	Maximum output frequency [Hz]	Part No. IP20	Part No. IP00	Rated filter current at 50 Hz [A]
525–600 [VAC]	**-690 [VAC]**					
P1K1		4	100	130B2423	130B2414	28
P1K5		4	100	130B2423	130B2414	28
P2K2		4	100	130B2423	130B2414	28
P3K0		4	100	130B2423	130B2414	28
P4K0		4	100	130B2424	130B2415	45
P5K5		4	100	130B2424	130B2415	45
P7K5		3	100	130B2425	130B2416	75
P11K		3	100	130B2425	130B2416	75
P15K		3	100	130B2426	130B2417	115
P18K		3	100	130B2426	130B2417	115
P22K		3	100	130B2427	130B2418	165
P30K		3	100	130B2427	130B2418	165
P37K	P45K	3	100	130B2425	130B2416	75
P45K	P55K	3	100	130B2425	130B2416	75
P55K	P75K	3	100	130B2426	130B2417	115
P75K	P90K	3	100	130B2426	130B2417	115
P90K	P110	3	100	130B2427	130B2418	165
	P132	2	100	130B2427	130B2418	165
	P160	2	100	130B2428	130B2419	260
	P200	2	100	130B2428	130B2419	260
	P250	2	100	130B2429	130B2420	310
	P315	2	100	130B2238	130B2235	430
	P400	2	100	130B2238	130B2235	430
	P450	2	100	130B2239	130B2236	530
	P500	2	100	130B2239	130B2236	530
	P560	2	100	130B2274	130B2280	630
	P630	2	100	130B2274	130B2280	630
	P710	2	100	130B2430	130B2421	765
	P800	2	100	130B2431	130B2422	1350
	P900	2	100	130B2431	130B2422	1350
	P1M0	2	100	130B2431	130B2422	1350
	P1M2	2	100	130B2431	130B2422	1350
	P1M4	2	100	2x130B2430	2x130B2421	1530

NOTE!
See also Output Filter Design Guide, MG.90.Nx.yy

4.2.8 Ordering numbers: Brake resistors

NOTE!
See Brake Resistor Design Guide, MG.90.Ox.yy

5 How to Install

5

Page intentionally left blank!

5.1.1 Mechanical front views

A2	A3	A5	B1	B2	B3	B4	C1	C2	C3	C4
										
IP20/21*	IP20/21*	IP55/66	IP21/55/66	IP21/55/66	IP20/21*	IP20/21*	IP21/55/66	IP21/55/66	IP20/21*	IP20/21*

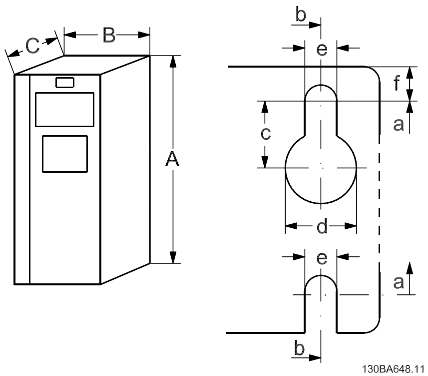


Figure 5.1: Top and bottom mounting holes.

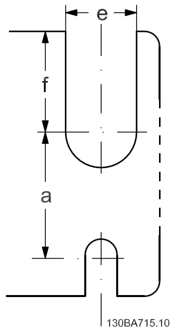


Figure 5.2: Top and bottom mounting holes. (B4+C3+C4 only)

Accessory bags containing necessary brackets, screws and connectors are included with the drives upon delivery.

All measurements in mm.

* IP21 can be established with a kit as described in the section: IP 21/ IP 4X/ TYPE 1 Enclosure Kit in the Design Guide.

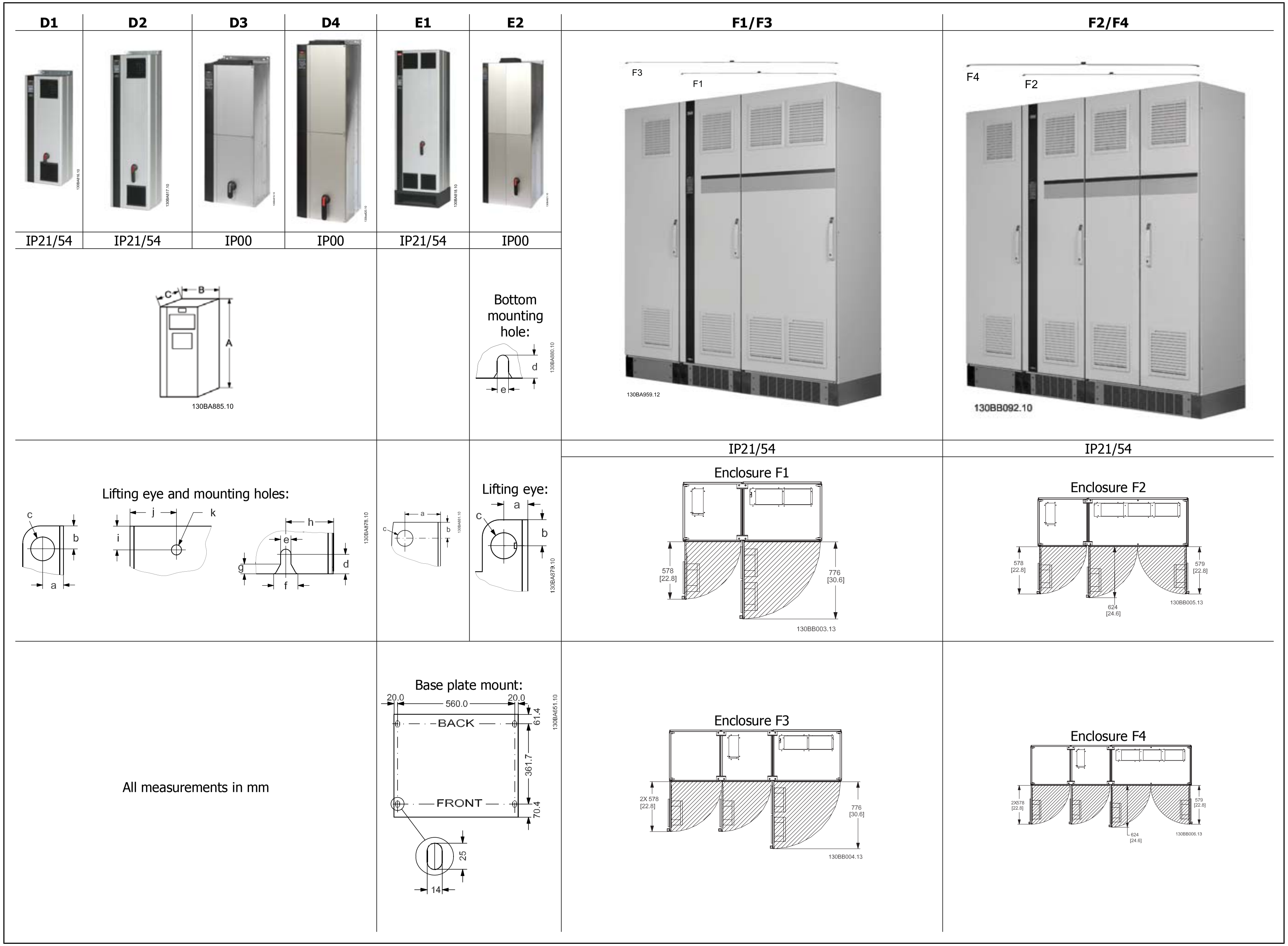
5.1.2 Mechanical dimensions

Mechanical dimensions

Frame size (kW):		A2		A3		A5	B1	B2	B3	B4	C1	C2	C3	C4
200–240 V		**1.1–2.2**		**3.0–3.7**		**1.1–3.7**	**5.5–11**	**15**	**5.5–11**	**15–18.5**	**18.5–30**	**37-45**	**22-30**	**37-45**
380–480 V		**1.1–4.0**		**5.5–7.5**		**1.1–7.5**	**11–18.5**	**22-30**	**11–18.5**	**22–37**	**37–55**	**75-90**	**45-55**	**75-90**
525–600 V				**1.1–7.5**		**1.1–7.5**	**11–18.5**	**22-30**	**11–18.5**	**22–37**	**37–55**	**75-90**	**45-55**	**75-90**
IP		20	21	20	21	55/66	21/ 55/66	21/ 55/66	20	20	21/ 55/66	21/ 55/66	20	20
NEMA		Chassis	Type 1	Chassis	Type 1	Type 12	Type 1/12	Type 1/12	Chassis	Chassis	Type 1/12	Type 1/12	Chassis	Chassis
Height (mm)														
Enclosure	A**	246	372	246	372	420	480	650	350	460	680	770	490	600
..with de-coupling plate	A2	374	-	374	-	-	-	-	419	595	-	-	630	800
Backplate	A1	268	375	268	375	420	480	650	399	520	680	770	550	660
Distance between mount. holes	a	257	350	257	350	402	454	624	380	495	648	739	521	631
Width (mm)														
Enclosure	B	90	90	130	130	242	242	242	165	231	308	370	308	370
With one C option	B	130	130	170	170	242	242	242	205	231	308	370	308	370
Backplate	B	90	90	130	130	242	242	242	165	231	308	370	308	370
Distance between mount. holes	b	70	70	110	110	215	210	210	140	200	272	334	270	330
Depth (mm)														
Without option A/B	C	205	205	205	205	200	260	260	248	242	310	335	333	333
With option A/B	C*	220	220	220	220	200	260	260	262	242	310	335	333	333
Screw holes (mm)														
	c	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.2	12	12	8	-	12	12	-	-
Diameter ø	d	11	11	11	11	12	19	19	12	-	19	19	-	-
Diameter ø	e	5.5	5.5	5.5	5.5	6.5	9	9	6.8	8.5	9.0	9.0	8.5	8.5
	f	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	7.9	15	9.8	9.8	17	17
Max weight (kg)		4.9	5.3	6.6	7.0	14	23	27	12	23.5	45	65	35	50

* Depth of enclosure will vary with different options installed.

** The free space requirements are above and below the bare enclosure height measurement A. See section 3.2.3 for further information.


D1
D2
D3
D4
E1
E2
F1/F3
F2/F4
IP21/54
IP21/54
IP00
IP00
IP21/54
IP00
F3
F1
130BA959.12
F4
F2
130BB092.10
A
B
C
130BA885.10
Bottom mounting hole:
d
e
130BA880.10
IP21/54
IP21/54
Enclosure F1
578 [22.8]
776 [30.6]
130BB003.13
Enclosure F2
578 [22.8]
579 [22.8]
624 [24.6]
130BB005.13
Lifting eye and mounting holes:
c
b
a
j
k
i
h
e
g
d
f
130BA878.10
a
b
c
Lifting eye:
a
c
b
130BA879.10
All measurements in mm
Base plate mount:
20.0
560.0
20.0
BACK
FRONT
61.4
361.7
70.4
25
14
130BA651.10
Enclosure F3
2X 578 [22.8]
776 [30.6]
130BB004.13
Enclosure F4
2X578 [22.8]
579 [22.8]
624 [24.6]
130BB006.13

Mechanical dimensions

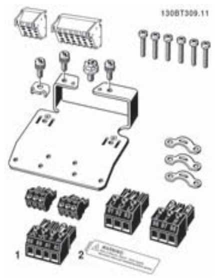
Enclosure size (kW)		D1	D2	D3	D4	E1	E2	F1	F2	F3	F4
380–480 V AC **525–690 V AC**		**110-132** **45-160**	**160-250** **200-400**	**110-132** **45-160**	**160-250** **200-400**	**315-450** **450-630**	**315-450** **450-630**	**500-710** **710-900**	**800-1000** **1000-1400**	**500-710** **710-900**	**800-1000** **1000-1400**
IP NEMA		21/54 Type 1/12	21/54 Type 1/12	00 Chassis	00 Chassis	21/54 Type 1/12	00 Chassis	21/54 Type 1/12	21/54 Type 1/12	21/54 Type 1/12	21/54 Type 1/12
Shipping dimensions (mm):											
Width		1730	1730	1220	1490	2197	1705	2324	2324	2324	2324
Height		650	650	650	650	840	831	1569	1962	2159	2559
Depth		570	570	570	570	736	736	927	927	927	927
Adjustable frequency driveDrive dimensions: (mm)											
Height											
Backplate	A	1209	1589	1046	1327	2000	1547	2281	2281	2281	2281
Width											
Backplate	B	420	420	408	408	600	585	1400	1800	2000	2400
Depth											
	C	380	380	375	375	494	494	607	607	607	607
Dimensions brackets (mm/inch)											
Center hole to edge	a	22/0.9	22/0.9	22/0.9	22/0.9	56/2.2	23/0.9				
Center hole to edge	b	25/1.0	25/1.0	25/1.0	25/1.0	25/1.0	25/1.0				
Hole diameter	c	25/1.0	25/1.0	25/1.0	25/1.0	25/1.0	25/1.0				
	d	20/0.8	20/0.8	20/0.8	20/0.8		27/1.1				
	e	11/0.4	11/0.4	11/0.4	11/0.4		13/0.5				
	f	22/0.9	22/0.9	22/0.9	22/0.9						
	g	10/0.4	10/0.4	10/0.4	10/0.4						
	h	51/2.0	51/2.0	51/2.0	51/2.0						
	i	25/1.0	25/1.0	25/1.0	25/1.0						
	j	49/1.9	49/1.9	49/1.9	49/1.9						
Hole diameter	k	11/0.4	11/0.4	11/0.4	11/0.4						
Max weight (kg)		104	151	91	138	313	277	1004	1246	1299	1541

Please contact Danfoss for more detailed information and CAD drawings for your own planning purposes.

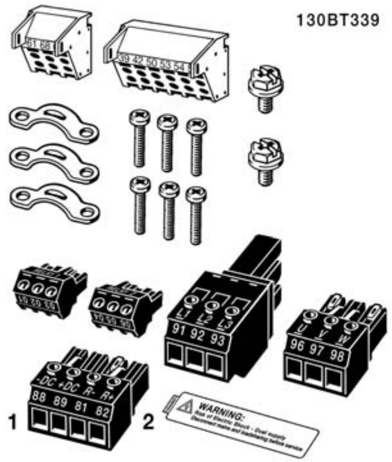
5

5.1.3 Accessory bags

Accessory Bags: Find the following parts included in the adjustable frequency drive accessory bags

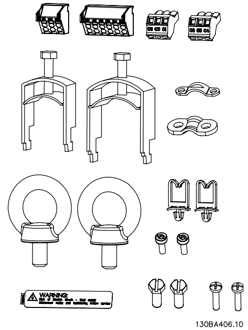


Frame sizes A1, A2 and A3

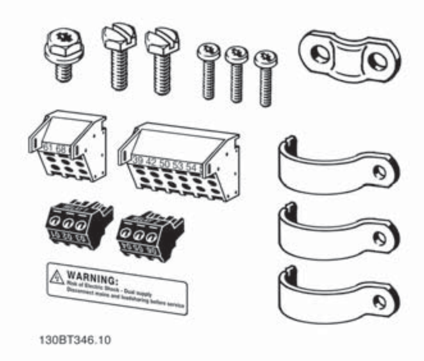


Frame size A5

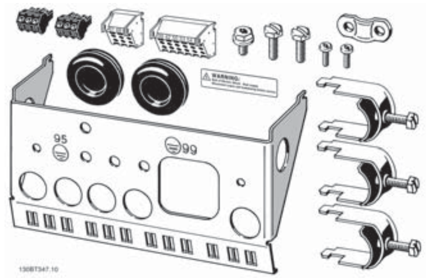
Frame sizes B1 and B2



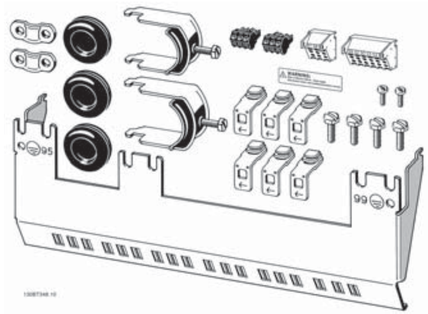
Frame sizes C1 and C2



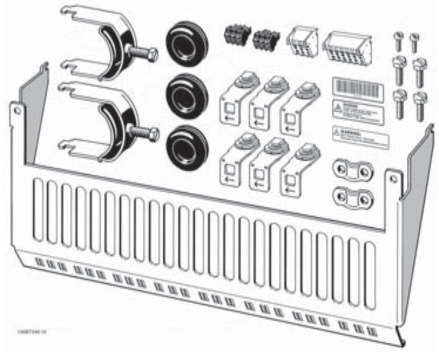
Frame size B3



Frame size B4



Frame size C3


Frame size C4

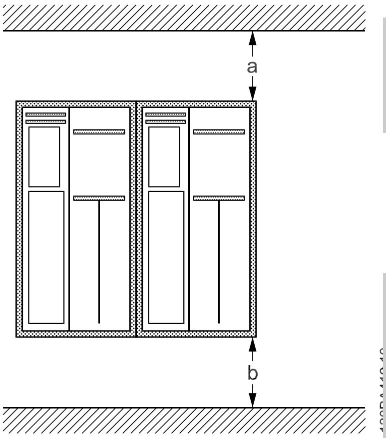
1 + 2 only available in units with brake chopper. For DC link connection (load sharing) the connector 1 can be ordered separately (Code no. 130B1064)

An eight-pole connector is included in accessory bag for FC 102 without Safe Stop.

5.1.4 Mechanical mounting

All A, B and C enclosures allow side-by-side installation.
Exception: If a IP21 kit is used, there has to be a clearance between the enclosures. For enclosures A2, A3, B3,B4 and C3, the minimum clearance is 2 in [50 mm], for C4, it is 3 in [75 mm].

For optimal cooling conditions, allow a free air passage above and below the adjustable frequency drive. See table below.



Air passage for different enclosures

Enclo-sure:	A2	A3	A5	B1	B2	B3	B4	C1	C2	C3	C4
a (mm):	100	100	100	200	200	200	200	200	225	200	225
b (mm):	100	100	100	200	200	200	200	200	225	200	225

1. Drill holes in accordance with the measurements given.
2. You must provide screws suitable for the surface on which you want to mount the adjustable frequency drive. Retighten all four screws.

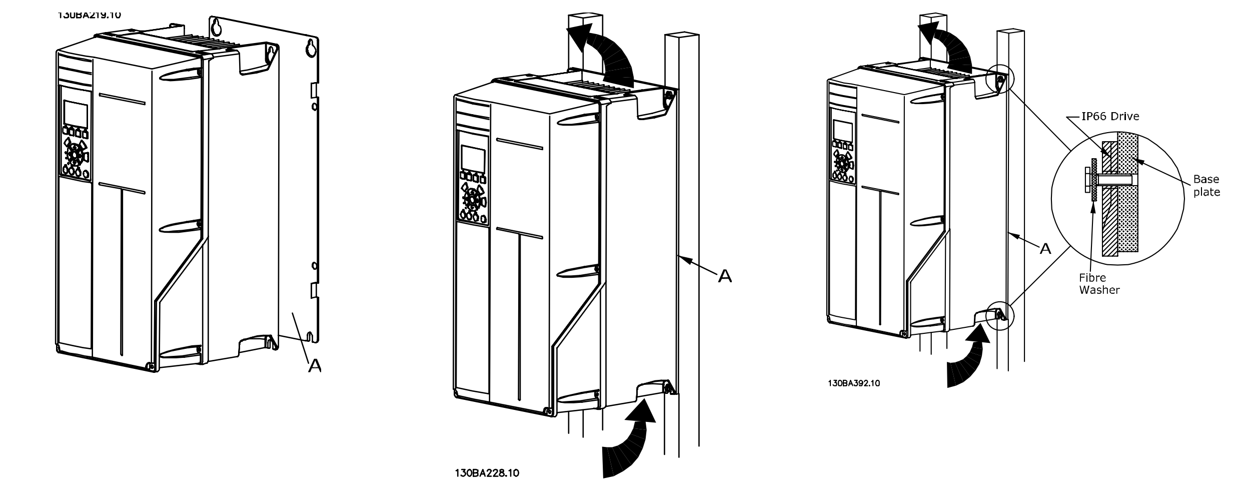


Table 5.1: When mounting enclosure sizes A5, B1, B2, B3, B4, C1, C2, C3 and C4 on a non-solid back wall, the drive must be provided with a backplate A due to insufficient cooling air over the heatsink.

5.1.5 Lifting

Always lift the adjustable frequency drive using the dedicated lifting holes. For all D and E2 (IP00) enclosures, use a bar to avoid bending the lifting holes of the adjustable frequency drive.

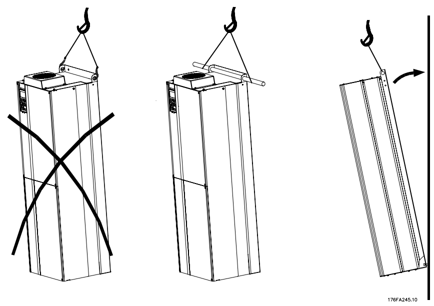


Figure 5.3: Recommended lifting method, frame sizes D and E .

The lifting bar must be able to handle the weight of the adjustable frequency drive. See *Mechanical Dimensions* for the weight of the different frame sizes. Maximum diameter for bar is 1 in [2.5 cm]. The angle from the top of the drive to the lifting cable should be 60° C or greater.

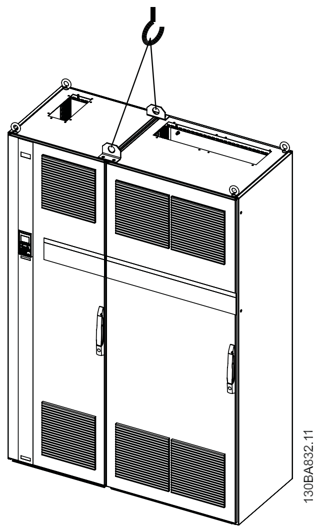


Figure 5.4: Recommended lifting method, frame size F1.

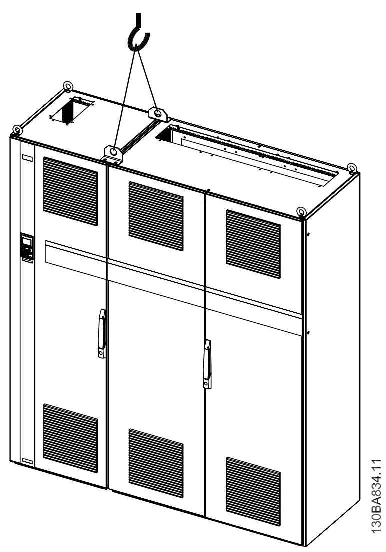


Figure 5.5: Recommended lifting method, frame size F2.

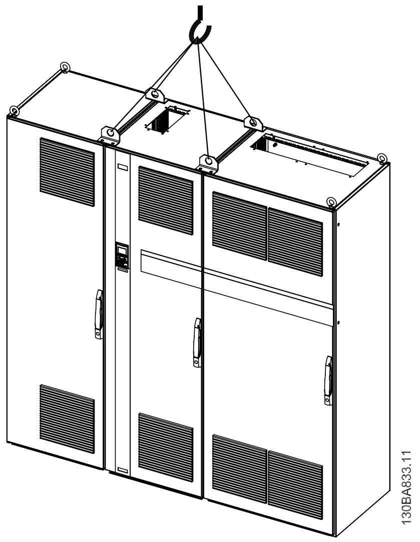


Figure 5.6: Recommended lifting method, frame size F3.

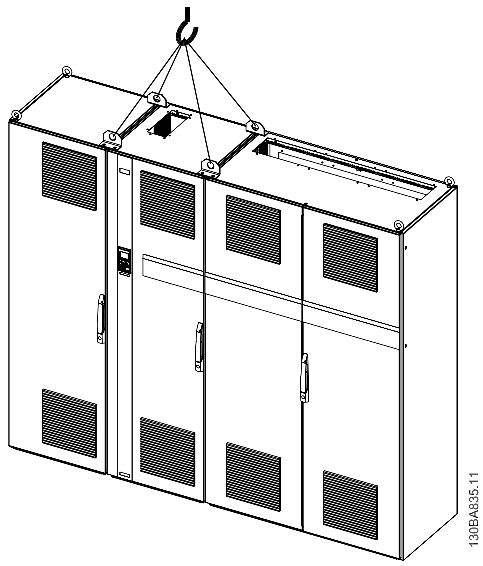


Figure 5.7: Recommended lifting method, frame size F4.

NOTE!

Note the plinth is provided in the same packaging as the adjustable frequency drive but is not attached to Unit Sizesframe sizes F1-F461-64 during shipment. The plinth is required to allow airflow to the drive to provide proper cooling. The Unit SizesF6 frames should be positioned on top of the plinth in the final installation location. The angle from the top of the drive to the lifting cable should be 60° C or greater.

5.1.6 Safety Requirements of Mechanical Installation

Pay attention to the requirements that apply to integration and the field mounting kit. Observe the information in the list to avoid serious injury or equipment damage, especially when installing large units.

The adjustable frequency drive is cooled by air circulation.
To protect the unit from overheating, it must be ensured that the ambient temperature *does not exceed the maximum temperature stated for the adjustable frequency drive*, and that the 24-hour average temperature *is not exceeded*. Locate the maximum temperature and 24-hour average in the paragraph *Derating for Ambient Temperature*.
If the ambient temperature is in the range of 113°–131°F [45°C–55°], derating of the adjustable frequency drive will become relevant, see *Derating for Ambient Temperature*.
The service life of the adjustable frequency drive is reduced if derating for ambient temperature is not taken into account.

5.1.7 Field Mounting

For field mounting the IP 21/IP 4X top/TYPE 1 kits or IP 54/55 units are recommended.

5.2 Electrical Installation

5.2.1 Cables general

NOTE!
For the VLT HVAC Drive High Power series line power and motor connections, please see VLT HVAC Drive *High Power Instruction ManualMG.11.FX.YY* .

NOTE!
Cables General
All cabling must comply with national and local regulations on cable cross-sections and ambient temperature. Copper (140°–167°F [60°–75°C]) conductors are recommended.

Details of terminal tightening torques.

	Power (kW)			Torque (Nm)					
Enclo-sure	**200–240 V**	**380–480 V**	**525–600 V**	**Line pow-er**	**Motor**	**DC connec-tion**	**Brake**	**Ground**	**Relay**
A2	1.1–3.0	1.1–4.0	1.1–4.0	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	3	0.6
A3	3.7	5.5 - 7.5	5.5–7.5	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	3	0.6
A5	1.1–3.7	1.1–7.5	1.1–7.5	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	3	0.6
B1	5.5–11	11–18.5	-	1.8	1.8	1.5	1.5	3	0.6
B2	-	22	-	4.5	4.5	3.7	3.7	3	0.6
	15	30	-	4.5 2)	4.5 2)	3.7	3.7	3	0.6
B3	5.5–11	11–18.5	11–18.5	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	3	0.6
B4	11–18.5	18.5 - 37	18.5–37	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	3	0.6
C1	18.5 - 30	37 - 55	-	10	10	10	10	3	0.6
C2	37 - 45	75 - 90	- -	14/24 1)	14/24 1)	14	14	3	0.6
C3	18.5 - 30	37 - 55	37 - 55	10	10	10	10	3	0.6
C4	30 - 45	55 - 90	55 - 90	14/24 1)	14/24 1)	14	14	3	0.6
High Power									
Enclo-sure		**380–480 V**	**525–690 V**	**Line pow-er**	**Motor**	**DC connec-tion**	**Brake**	**Ground**	**Relay**
D1/D3		110-132	45-160	19	19	9.6	9.6	19	0.6
D2/D4		160-250	200-400	19	19	9.6	9.6	19	0.6
E1/E2		315-450	450-630	19	19	19	9.6	19	0.6
F1–F33)		500-710	710-900	19	19	19	9.6	19	0.6
F2–F43)		800-1000	1000-1400	19	19	19	9.6	19	0.6

Table 5.2: Tightening of terminals

1) For different cable dimensions x/y, where x ≤0.147 in² [95 mm²] and y≥0.147 in² [95 mm²]

2) Cable dimensions above 25 hp [18.5 kW] ≥ 0.0542 in² [35 mm²] and below 30 hp [22 kW] ≤ 0.0155 in² [10 mm²]

3) For data on the F-series, please consult VLT HVAC Drive High Power Instruction Manual, MG.11.F1.02

5.2.2 Electrical installation and control cables

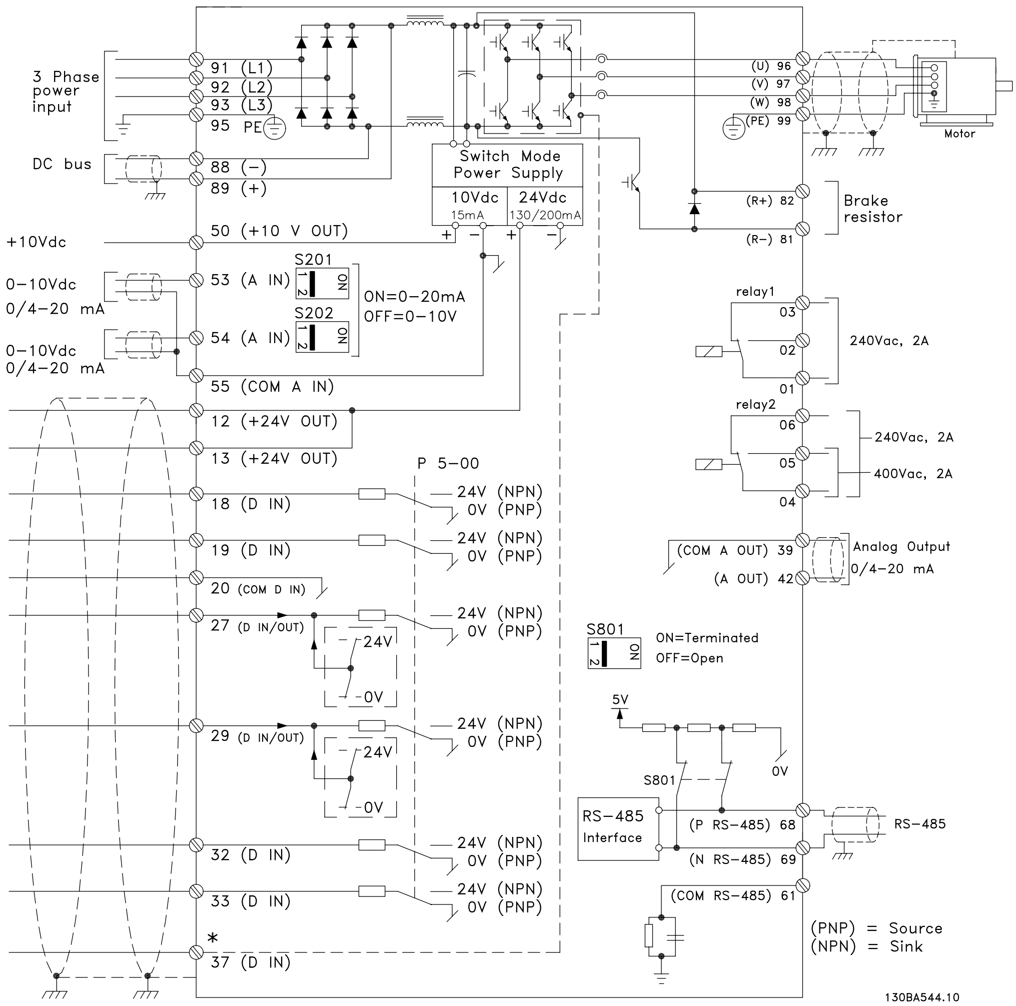


Figure 5.8: Diagram showing all electrical terminals. (Terminal 37 present for units with safe stop function only.)

Terminal number	Terminal description	Parameter number	Factory default
1+2+3	Terminal 1+2+3-Relay1	5-40	No operation
4+5+6	Terminal 4+5+6-Relay2	5-40	No operation
12	Terminal 12 Supply	-	+24 V DC
13	Terminal 13 Supply	-	+24 V DC
18	Terminal 18 Digital Input	5-10	Start
19	Terminal 19 Digital Input	5-11	No operation
20	Terminal 20	-	Common
27	Terminal 27 Digital Input/Output	5-12/5-30	Coast inverse
29	Terminal 29 Digital Input/Output	5-13/5-31	Jog
32	Terminal 32 Digital Input	5-14	No operation
33	Terminal 33 Digital Input	5-15	No operation
37	Terminal 37 Digital Input	-	Safe Stop
42	Terminal 42 Analog Output	6-50	Speed 0-HighLim
53	Terminal 53 Analog Input	3-15/6-1*/20-0*	Reference
54	Terminal 54 Analog Input	3-15/6-2*/20-0*	Feedback

Table 5.3: Terminal connections

Very long control cables and analog signals may, in rare cases and depending on the installation, result in 50/60 Hz ground loops due to noise from line power supply cables.

If this occurs, break the shield or insert a 100 nF capacitor between shield and chassis.

NOTE!
The common of digital / analog inputs and outputs should be connected to separate common terminals 20, 39, and 55. This will prevent ground current interference among groups. For example, it prevents switching on digital inputs from disturbing analog inputs.

NOTE!
Control cables must be shielded/armored.

5.2.3 Motor Cables

See section *General Specifications* for maximum dimensioning of motor cable cross-section and length.

- Use a shielded/armored motor cable to comply with EMC emission specifications.
- Keep the motor cable as short as possible to reduce the noise level and leakage currents.
- Connect the motor cable shield to both the de-coupling plate of the adjustable frequency drive and to the metal cabinet of the motor.
- Make the shield connections with the largest possible surface area (cable clamp). This is done by using the supplied installation devices in the adjustable frequency drive.
- Avoid mounting with twisted shield ends (pigtails), which will spoil high frequency shielding effects.
- If it is necessary to split the shield to install a motor isolator or motor relay, the shield must be continued with the lowest possible HF impedance.

F frame Requirements
F1/F3 requirements: Motor phase cable quantities must be multiples of 2, resulting in 2, 4, 6, or 8 (1 cable is not allowed) to obtain equal amount of wires attached to both inverter module terminals. The cables are required to be equal length within 10% between the inverter module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

F2/F4 requirements: Motor phase cable quantities must be multiples of 3, resulting in 3, 6, 9, or 12 (1 or 2 cables are not allowed) to obtain equal amount of wires attached to each inverter module terminal. The wires are required to be equal length within 10% between the inverter module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

Output junction box requirements: The length, minimum 8 ft [2.5 m], and quantity of cables must be equal from each inverter module to the common terminal in the junction box.

NOTE!
If a retrofit application requires unequal amount of wires per phase, please consult the factory for requirements and documentation or use the top/bottom entry side cabinet busbar option.

5.2.4 Electrical Installation of Motor Cables

Shielding of cables
Avoid installation with twisted shield ends (pigtails). They spoil the shielding effect at higher frequencies.
If it is necessary to break the shield to install a motor isolator or motor contactor, the shield must be continued at the lowest possible HF impedance.

Cable length and cross-section
The adjustable frequency drive has been tested with a given length of cable and a given cross-section of that cable. If the cross-section is increased, the cable capacitance - and thus the leakage current - may increase, thereby requiring that the cable length is reduced accordingly.

Switching frequency
When adjustable frequency drives are used together with sine-wave filters to reduce the acoustic noise from a motor, the switching frequency must be set according to the sine-wave filter instructions in par. 14-01 *Switching Frequency*.

Aluminum conductors
Aluminum conductors are not recommended. Terminals can accept aluminum conductors but the conductor surface has to be clean and the oxidation must be removed and sealed by neutral acid free Vaseline grease before the conductor is connected.
Furthermore, the terminal screw must be retightened after two days due to the softness of the aluminum. It is crucial to keep the connection a gas-tight joint, otherwise the aluminum surface will oxidize again.

5.2.5 Enclosure knock-outs

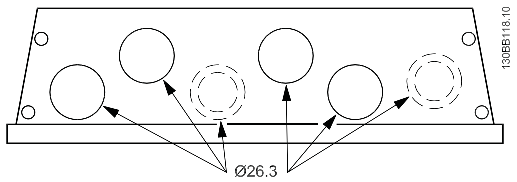


Figure 5.9: Cable entry holes for enclosure A5. The suggested use of the holes are purely recommendations and other solutions are possible.

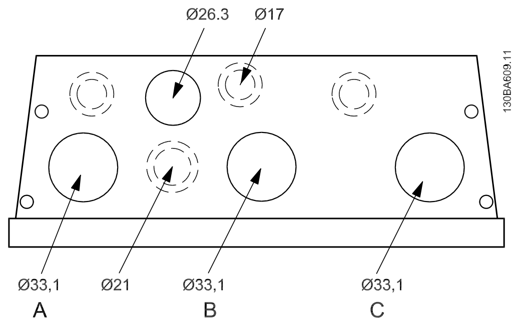


Figure 5.10: Cable entry holes for enclosure B1. The suggested use of the holes are purely recommendations and other solutions are possible.

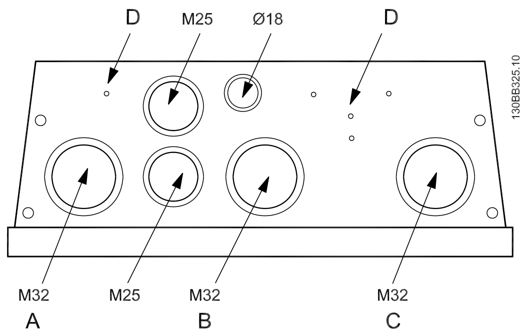


Figure 5.11: Cable entry holes for enclosure B1. The suggested use of the holes are purely recommendations and other solutions are possible.

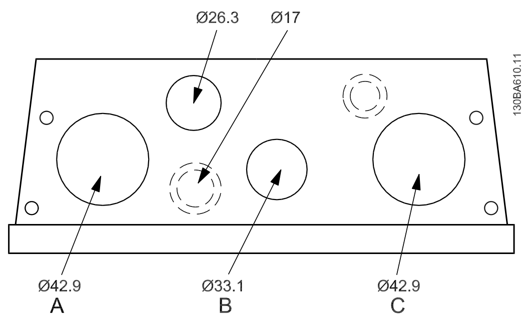


Figure 5.12: Cable entry holes for enclosure B2. The suggested use of the holes are purely recommendations and other solutions are possible.

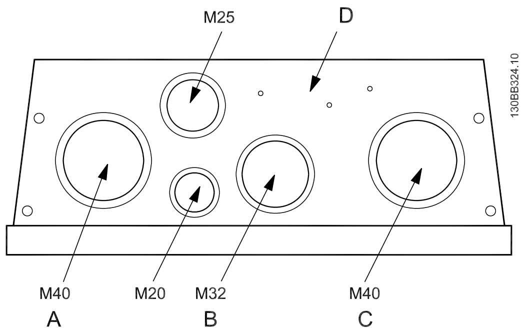


Figure 5.13: Cable entry holes for enclosure B2. The suggested use of the holes are purely recommendations and other solutions are possible.

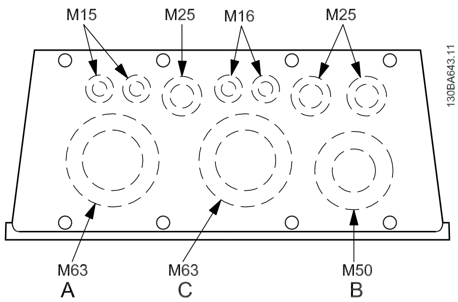


Figure 5.14: Cable entry holes for enclosure C1. The suggested use of the holes are purely recommendations and other solutions are possible.

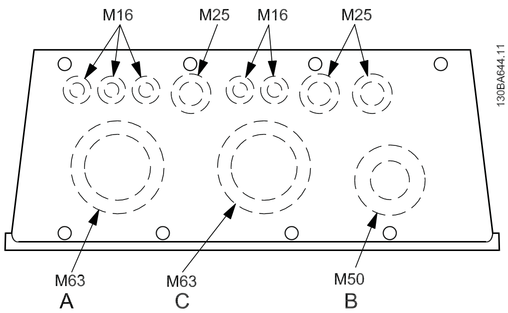


Figure 5.15: Cable entry holes for enclosure C2. The suggested use of the holes are purely recommendations and other solutions are possible.

Legend:

A: Line in

B: Brake/load sharing

C: Motor out

D: Free space

5.2.6 Removal of Knockouts for Extra Cables

1. Remove the cable entry from the adjustable frequency drive (this prevents foreign parts from falling into the adjustable frequency drive when removing knockouts)
2. The cable entry must be supported around the knockout you intend to remove.
3. The knockout can now be removed with a strong mandrel and a hammer.
4. Remove burrs from the hole.
5. Mount cable entry on adjustable frequency drive.

5.2.7 Connector/Conduit Entry - IP21 (NEMA 1) and IP54 (NEMA12)

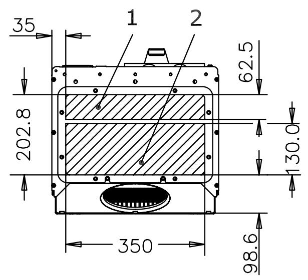
Cables are connected through the connector plate from the bottom. Remove the plate and plan where to place the entry for the connectors or conduits. Prepare holes in the marked area on the drawing.

NOTE!
The connector plate must be fitted to the adjustable frequency drive to ensure the specified protection degree, as well as ensuring proper cooling of the unit. If the connector plate is not mounted, the adjustable frequency drive may trip on Alarm 69, Pwr. Card Temp

130BB073.10

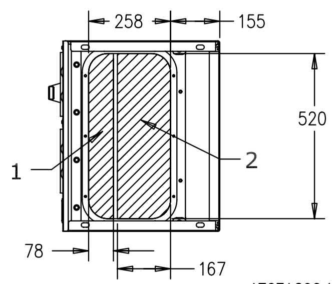
Figure 5.16: Example of proper installation of the connector plate.

Frame size D1 + D2



176FA289.11

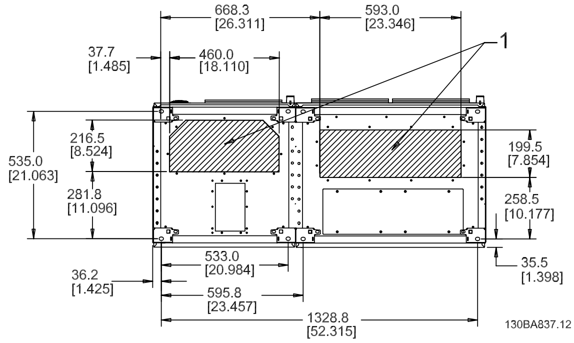
Frame size E1



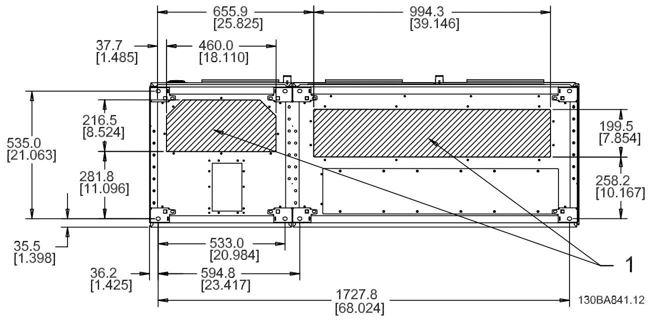
176FA290.11

Cable entries viewed from the bottom of the adjustable frequency drive - 1) Line power side 2) Motor side

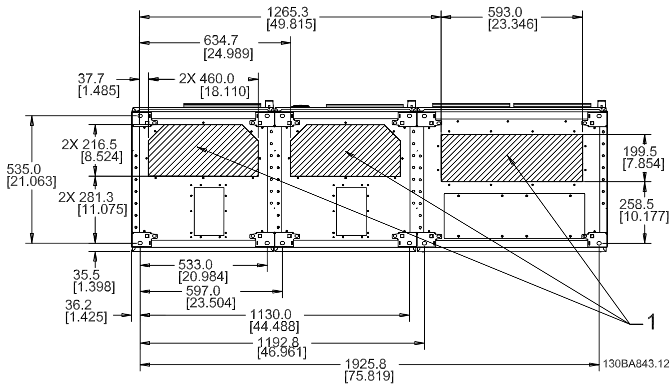
Frame size F1



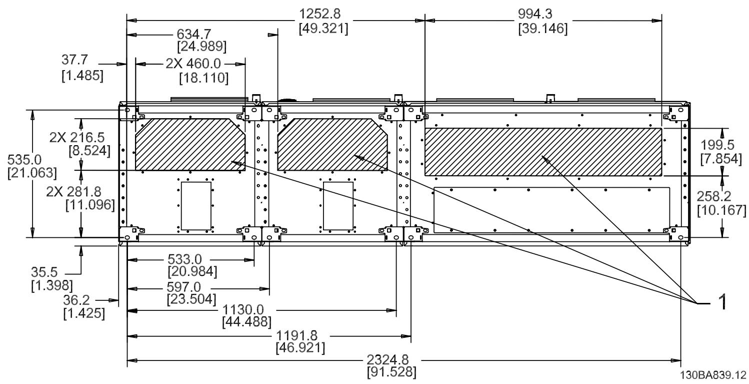
Frame size F2



Frame size F3



Frame size F4



F1-F4: Cable entries viewed from the bottom of the adjustable frequency drive - 1) Place conduits in marked areas

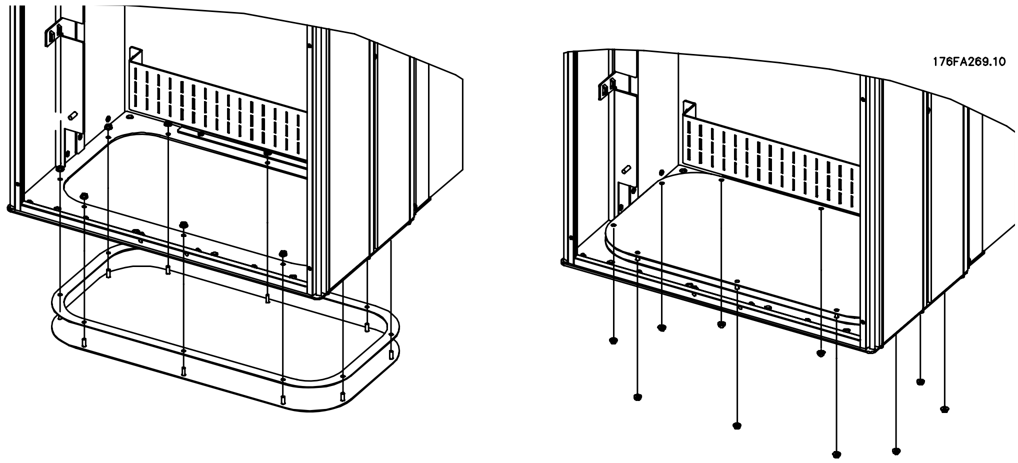


Figure 5.17: Mounting of bottom plate,frame size E1.

The bottom plate of the E1 can be mounted from either inside or outside of the enclosure, allowing flexibility in the installation process, i.e., if mounted from the bottom the connectors and cables can be mounted before the adjustable frequency drive is placed on the pedestal.

5.2.8 Fuses

Branch Circuit Protection

In order to protect the installation against electrical and fire hazard, all branch circuits in an installation, switch gear, machines, etc., must be short-circuit and overcurrent protected according to the national/international regulations.

Short-circuit protection:

The adjustable frequency drive must be protected against short-circuit to avoid electrical or fire hazard. Danfoss recommends using the fuses mentioned below to protect service personnel and equipment in case of an internal failure in the drive. The adjustable frequency drive provides full short-circuit protection in case of a short-circuit on the motor output.

Overcurrent protection

Provide overload protection to avoid fire hazard due to overheating of the cables in the installation. Overcurrent protection must always be provided in accordance with national regulations. The adjustable frequency drive is equipped with internal overcurrent protection that can be used for upstream overload protection (UL applications excluded). See par. 4-18 *Current Limit* in the VLT HVAC Drive *Programming Guide* . Fuses must be designed for protection in a circuit capable of supplying a maximum of 100,000 A_{rms} (symmetrical), 500 V/600 V maximum.

Overcurrent protection

If UL/cUL is not to be complied with, Danfoss recommends using the fuses mentioned in the table below, which will ensure compliance with EN50178. In case of malfunction, not following the recommendation may result in unnecessary damage to the adjustable frequency drive.

5

UL compliance

Non-UL compliance fuses

Adjustable frequency drive	Max. fuse size	Voltage	Type
200–240 V - T2			
1K1-1K5	16A[1]	200–240 V	type gG
2K2	25A[1]	200–240 V	type gG
3K0	25A[1]	200–240 V	type gG
3K7	35A[1]	200–240 V	type gG
5K5	50A[1]	200–240 V	type gG
7K5	63A[1]	200–240 V	type gG
11K	63A[1]	200–240 V	type gG
15K	80A[1]	200–240 V	type gG
18K5	125A[1]	200–240 V	type gG
22K	125A[1]	200–240 V	type gG
30K	160A[1]	200–240 V	type gG
37K	200A[1]	200–240 V	type aR
45K	250A[1]	200–240 V	type aR
380–480 V - T4			
1K1-1K5	10A[1]	380–500 V	type gG
2K2-3K0	16A[1]	380–500 V	type gG
4K0-5K5	25A[1]	380–500 V	type gG
7K5	35A[1]	380–500 V	type gG
11K–15K	63A[1]	380–500 V	type gG
18K	63A[1]	380–500 V	type gG
22K	63A[1]	380–500 V	type gG
30K	80A[1]	380–500 V	type gG
37K	100A[1]	380–500 V	type gG
45K	125A[1]	380–500 V	type gG
55K	160A[1]	380–500 V	type gG
75K	250A[1]	380–500 V	type aR
90K	250A[1]	380–500 V	type aR
1) Max. fuses - see national/international regulations to select an appropriate fuse size.			

Table 5.4: **Non-UL fuses 200 V to 480 V**

If UL/cUL is not to be complied with, we recommend using the following fuses, which will ensure compliance with EN50178:

Adjustable Frequency Drive	Voltage	Type
P110 - P250	380–480 V	type gG
P315 - P450	380–480 V	type gR

Table 5.5: Compliance with EN50178

UL compliance fuses

Adjustable frequency drive	Bussmann	Bussmann	Bussmann	SIBA	Littel fuse	Ferraz-Shawmut	Ferraz-Shawmut
200–240 V							
kW	Type RK1	Type J	Type T	Type RK1	Type RK1	Type CC	Type RK1
K25-K37	KTN-R05	JKS-05	JJN-05	5017906-005	KLN-R005	ATM-R05	A2K-05R
K55-1K1	KTN-R10	JKS-10	JJN-10	5017906-010	KLN-R10	ATM-R10	A2K-10R
1K5	KTN-R15	JKS-15	JJN-15	5017906-015	KLN-R15	ATM-R15	A2K-15R
2K2	KTN-R20	JKS-20	JJN-20	5012406-020	KLN-R20	ATM-R20	A2K-20R
3K0	KTN-R25	JKS-25	JJN-25	5012406-025	KLN-R25	ATM-R25	A2K-25R
3K7	KTN-R30	JKS-30	JJN-30	5012406-030	KLN-R30	ATM-R30	A2K-30R
5K5	KTN-R50	JKS-50	JJN-50	5012406-050	KLN-R50	-	A2K-50R
7K5	KTN-R50	JKS-60	JJN-60	5012406-050	KLN-R60	-	A2K-50R
11K	KTN-R60	JKS-60	JJN-60	5014006-063	KLN-R60	A2K-60R	A2K-60R
15K	KTN-R80	JKS-80	JJN-80	5014006-080	KLN-R80	A2K-80R	A2K-80R
18K5	KTN-R125	JKS-150	JJN-125	2028220-125	KLN-R125	A2K-125R	A2K-125R
22K	KTN-R125	JKS-150	JJN-125	2028220-125	KLN-R125	A2K-125R	A2K-125R
30K	FWX-150	-	-	2028220-150	L25S-150	A25X-150	A25X-150
37K	FWX-200	-	-	2028220-200	L25S-200	A25X-200	A25X-200
45K	FWX-250	-	-	2028220-250	L25S-250	A25X-250	A25X-250

Table 5.6: **UL fuses, 200–240 V**

Adjustable frequency drive	Bussmann	Bussmann	Bussmann	SIBA	Littel fuse	Ferraz-Shawmut	Ferraz-Shawmut
380–480 V, 525–600 V							
kW	Type RK1	Type J	Type T	Type RK1	Type RK1	Type CC	Type RK1
K37-1K1	KTS-R6	JKS-6	JJS-6	5017906-006	KLS-R6	ATM-R6	A6K-6R
1K5-2K2	KTS-R10	JKS-10	JJS-10	5017906-010	KLS-R10	ATM-R10	A6K-10R
3K0	KTS-R15	JKS-15	JJS-15	5017906-016	KLS-R16	ATM-R16	A6K-16R
4K0	KTS-R20	JKS-20	JJS-20	5017906-020	KLS-R20	ATM-R20	A6K-20R
5K5	KTS-R25	JKS-25	JJS-25	5017906-025	KLS-R25	ATM-R25	A6K-25R
7K5	KTS-R30	JKS-30	JJS-30	5012406-032	KLS-R30	ATM-R30	A6K-30R
11K	KTS-R40	JKS-40	JJS-40	5014006-040	KLS-R40	-	A6K-40R
15K	KTS-R40	JKS-40	JJS-40	5014006-040	KLS-R40	-	A6K-40R
18K	KTS-R50	JKS-50	JJS-50	5014006-050	KLS-R50	-	A6K-50R
22K	KTS-R60	JKS-60	JJS-60	5014006-063	KLS-R60	-	A6K-60R
30K	KTS-R80	JKS-80	JJS-80	2028220-100	KLS-R80	-	A6K-80R
37K	KTS-R100	JKS-100	JJS-100	2028220-125	KLS-R100		A6K-100R
45K	KTS-R125	JKS-150	JJS-150	2028220-125	KLS-R125		A6K-125R
55K	KTS-R150	JKS-150	JJS-150	2028220-160	KLS-R150		A6K-150R
75K	FWH-220	-	-	2028220-200	L50S-225		A50-P225
90K	FWH-250	-	-	2028220-250	L50S-250		A50-P250

Table 5.7: **UL fuses, 380–600 V**

KTS fuses from Bussmann may substitute for KTN for 240 V adjustable frequency drives.

FWH fuses from Bussmann may substitute for FWX for 240 V adjustable frequency drives.

KLSR fuses from LITTEL FUSE may substitute for KLNR fuses for 240 V adjustable frequency drives.

L50S fuses from LITTEL FUSE may substitute for L50S fuses for 240 V adjustable frequency drives.

A6KR fuses from FERRAZ SHAWMUT may substitute for A2KR for 240 V adjustable frequency drives.

A50X fuses from FERRAZ SHAWMUT may substitute for A25X for 240 V adjustable frequency drives.

380–480 V, frame sizes D, E and F

The fuses below are suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering 100,000 Arms (symmetrical), 240 V, or 480 V, or 500 V, or 600 V depending on the drive voltage rating. With the proper fusing, the drive Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR) is 100,000 Arms.

Size/ Type	Bussmann E1958 JFHR2**	Bussmann E4273 T/JDDZ**	SIBA E180276 JFHR2	LittelFuse E71611 JFHR2**	Ferraz-Shawmut E60314 JFHR2**	Bussmann E4274 H/JDDZ**	Bussmann E125085 JFHR2*	Internal Option Bussmann
P110	FWH-300	JJS-300	2061032.315	L50S-300	A50-P300	NOS-300	170M3017	170M3018
P132	FWH-350	JJS-350	2061032.35	L50S-350	A50-P350	NOS-350	170M3018	170M3018
P160	FWH-400	JJS-400	2061032.40	L50S-400	A50-P400	NOS-400	170M4012	170M4016
P200	FWH-500	JJS-500	2061032.50	L50S-500	A50-P500	NOS-500	170M4014	170M4016
P250	FWH-600	JJS-600	2062032.63	L50S-600	A50-P600	NOS-600	170M4016	170M4016

Table 5.8: Frame size D, Line fuses, 380–480 V

Size/Type	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Ferraz	Siba
P315	170M4017	700 A, 700 V	6.9URD31D08A0700	20 610 32.700
P355	170M6013	900 A, 700 V	6.9URD33D08A0900	20 630 32.900
P400	170M6013	900 A, 700 V	6.9URD33D08A0900	20 630 32.900
P450	170M6013	900 A, 700 V	6.9URD33D08A0900	20 630 32.900

Table 5.9: Frame size E, Line fuses, 380–480 V

Size/Type	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Siba	Internal Bussmann Option
P500	170M7081	1600 A, 700 V	20 695 32.1600	170M7082
P560	170M7081	1600 A, 700 V	20 695 32.1600	170M7082
P630	170M7082	2000 A, 700 V	20 695 32.2000	170M7082
P710	170M7082	2000 A, 700 V	20 695 32.2000	170M7082
P800	170M7083	2500 A, 700 V	20 695 32.2500	170M7083
P1M0	170M7083	2500 A, 700 V	20 695 32.2500	170M7083

Table 5.10: Frame size F, Line fuses, 380–480 V

Size/Type	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Siba
P500	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32.1000
P560	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32.1000
P630	170M6467	1400 A, 700 V	20 681 32.1400
P710	170M6467	1400 A, 700 V	20 681 32.1400
P800	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32.1000
P1M0	170M6467	1400 A, 700 V	20 681 32.1400

Table 5.11: Frame size F, Inverter module DC Link Fuses, 380–480 V

*170M fuses from Bussmann shown use the -/80 visual indicator; -TN/80 Type T, -/110 or TN/110 Type T indicator fuses of the same size and amperage may be substituted for external use

**Any minimum 500 V UL listed fuse with associated current rating may be used to meet UL requirements.

525–690 V, frame sizes D, E and F

Size/Type	Bussmann E125085 JFHR2	Amps	SIBA E180276 JFHR2	Ferraz-Shawmut E76491 JFHR2	Internal Option Bussmann
P45K	170M3013	125	2061032.125	6.6URD30D08A0125	170M3015
P55K	170M3014	160	2061032.16	6.6URD30D08A0160	170M3015
P75K	170M3015	200	2061032.2	6.6URD30D08A0200	170M3015
P90K	170M3015	200	2061032.2	6.6URD30D08A0200	170M3015
P110	170M3016	250	2061032.25	6.6URD30D08A0250	170M3018
P132	170M3017	315	2061032.315	6.6URD30D08A0315	170M3018
P160	170M3018	350	2061032.35	6.6URD30D08A0350	170M3018
P200	170M4011	350	2061032.35	6.6URD30D08A0350	170M5011
P250	170M4012	400	2061032.4	6.6URD30D08A0400	170M5011
P315	170M4014	500	2061032.5	6.6URD30D08A0500	170M5011
P400	170M5011	550	2062032.55	6.6URD32D08A550	170M5011

Table 5.12: Frame size D, 525–690 V

5

Size/Type	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Ferraz	Siba
P450	170M4017	700 A, 700 V	6.9URD31D08A0700	20 610 32.700
P500	170M4017	700 A, 700 V	6.9URD31D08A0700	20 610 32.700
P560	170M6013	900 A, 700 V	6.9URD33D08A0900	20 630 32.900
P630	170M6013	900 A, 700 V	6.9URD33D08A0900	20 630 32.900

Table 5.13: Frame size E, 525–690 V

Size/Type	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Siba	Internal Bussmann Option
P710	170M7081	1600 A, 700 V	20 695 32.1600	170M7082
P800	170M7081	1600 A, 700 V	20 695 32.1600	170M7082
P900	170M7081	1600 A, 700 V	20 695 32.1600	170M7082
P1M0	170M7081	1600 A, 700 V	20 695 32.1600	170M7082
P1M2	170M7082	2000 A, 700 V	20 695 32.2000	170M7082
P1M4	170M7083	2500 A, 700 V	20 695 32.2500	170M7083

Table 5.14: Frame size F, Line fuses, 525–690 V

Size/Type	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Siba
P710	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32. 1000
P800	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32. 1000
P900	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32. 1000
P1M0	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32. 1000
P1M2	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32. 1000
P1M4	170M8611	1100 A, 1000 V	20 781 32.1000

Table 5.15: Frame size F, Inverter module DC Link Fuses, 525–690 V

*170M fuses from Bussmann shown use the -/80 visual indicator; -TN/80 Type T, -/110 or TN/110 Type T indicator fuses of the same size and amperage may be substituted for external use.

Suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100,000 rms symmetrical amperes, 500/600/690 Volts maximum when protected by the above fuses.

Supplementary fuses

Frame size	Bussmann PN*	Rating
D, E and F	KTK-4	4 A, 600 V

Table 5.16: SMPS Fuse

Size/Type	Bussmann PN*	LittelFuse	Rating
P110-P315, 380–480 V	KTK-4		4 A, 600 V
P45K-P500, 525–690 V	KTK-4		4 A, 600 V
P355-P1M0, 380–480 V		KLK-15	15A, 600 V
P560-P1M4, 525–690 V		KLK-15	15A, 600 V

Table 5.17: Fan Fuses

Size/Type		Bussmann PN*	Rating	Alternative Fuses
P500-P1M0, 380–480 V	2.5–4.0 A	LPJ-6 SP or SPI	6 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 6 A
P710-P1M4, 525–690 V		LPJ-10 SP or SPI	10 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 10 A
P500-P1M0, 380–480 V	4.0–6.3 A	LPJ-10 SP or SPI	10 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 10 A
P710-P1M4, 525–690 V		LPJ-15 SP or SPI	15 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 15 A
P500-P1M0, 380–480 V	6.3–10 A	LPJ-15 SP or SPI	15 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 15 A
P710-P1M4, 525–690 V		LPJ-20 SP or SPI	20 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 20 A
P500-P1M0, 380–480 V	10–16 A	LPJ-25 SP or SPI	25 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 25 A
P710-P1M4, 525–690 V		LPJ-20 SP or SPI	20 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 20 A

Table 5.18: Manual Motor Controller Fuses

Frame size	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Alternative Fuses
F	LPJ-30 SP or SPI	30 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 30 A

Table 5.19: 30 A Fuse Protected Terminal Fuse

Frame size	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Alternative Fuses
F	LPJ-6 SP or SPI	6 A, 600 V	Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 6 A

Table 5.20: Control Transformer Fuse

Frame size	Bussmann PN*	Rating
F	GMC-800MA	800 mA, 250 V

Table 5.21: NAMUR Fuse

Frame size	Bussmann PN*	Rating	Alternative Fuses
F	LP-CC-6	6 A, 600 V	Any listed Class CC, 6 A

Table 5.22: Safety Relay Coil Fuse with PILS Relay

5.2.9 Control Terminals

Drawing reference numbers:

1. 10-pole plug, digital I/O.
2. 3-pole plug, RS-485 bus.
3. 6-pole, analog I/O.
4. USB Connection.

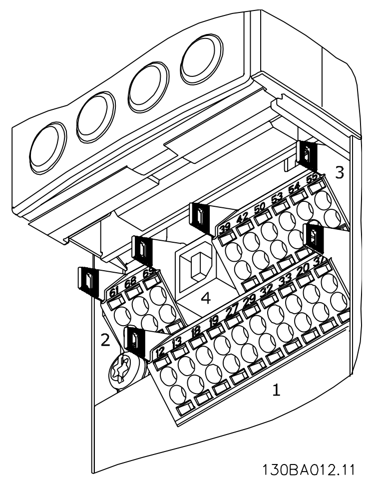


Figure 5.18: Control terminals (all enclosures)

5.2.10 Control Cable Terminals

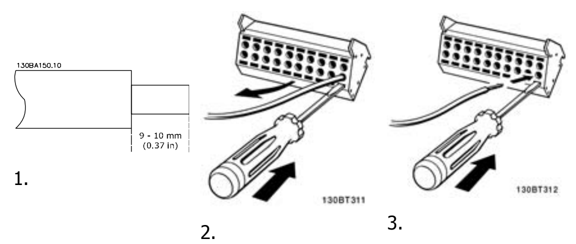
To mount the cable to the terminal:

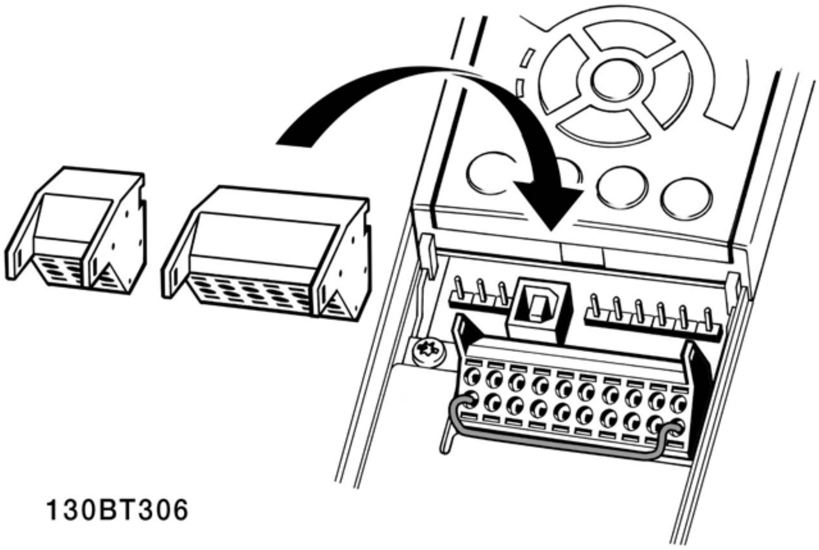
1. Strip isolation of 0.34–0.39 in [9–10 mm]
2. Insert a screw driver[1)] in the rectangular hole.
3. Insert the cable in the adjacent circular hole.
4. Remove the screwdriver. The cable is now mounted to the terminal.

To remove the cable from the terminal:

1. Insert a screw driver[1)] in the square hole.
2. Pull out the cable.

[1)] Max. 0.015 x 0.1 in. [0.4 x 2.5 mm]





5

5.2.11 Basic Wiring Example

1. Mount terminals from the accessory bag to the front of the adjustable frequency drive.
2. Connect terminals 18 and 27 to +24 V (terminal 12/13)

Default settings:
18 = latched start
27 = stop inverse

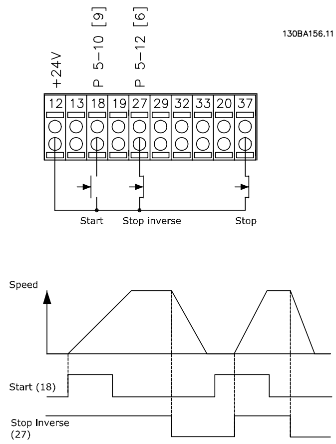


Figure 5.19: Terminal 37 available with Safe Stop Function only!

5.2.12 Electrical Installation, Control Cables

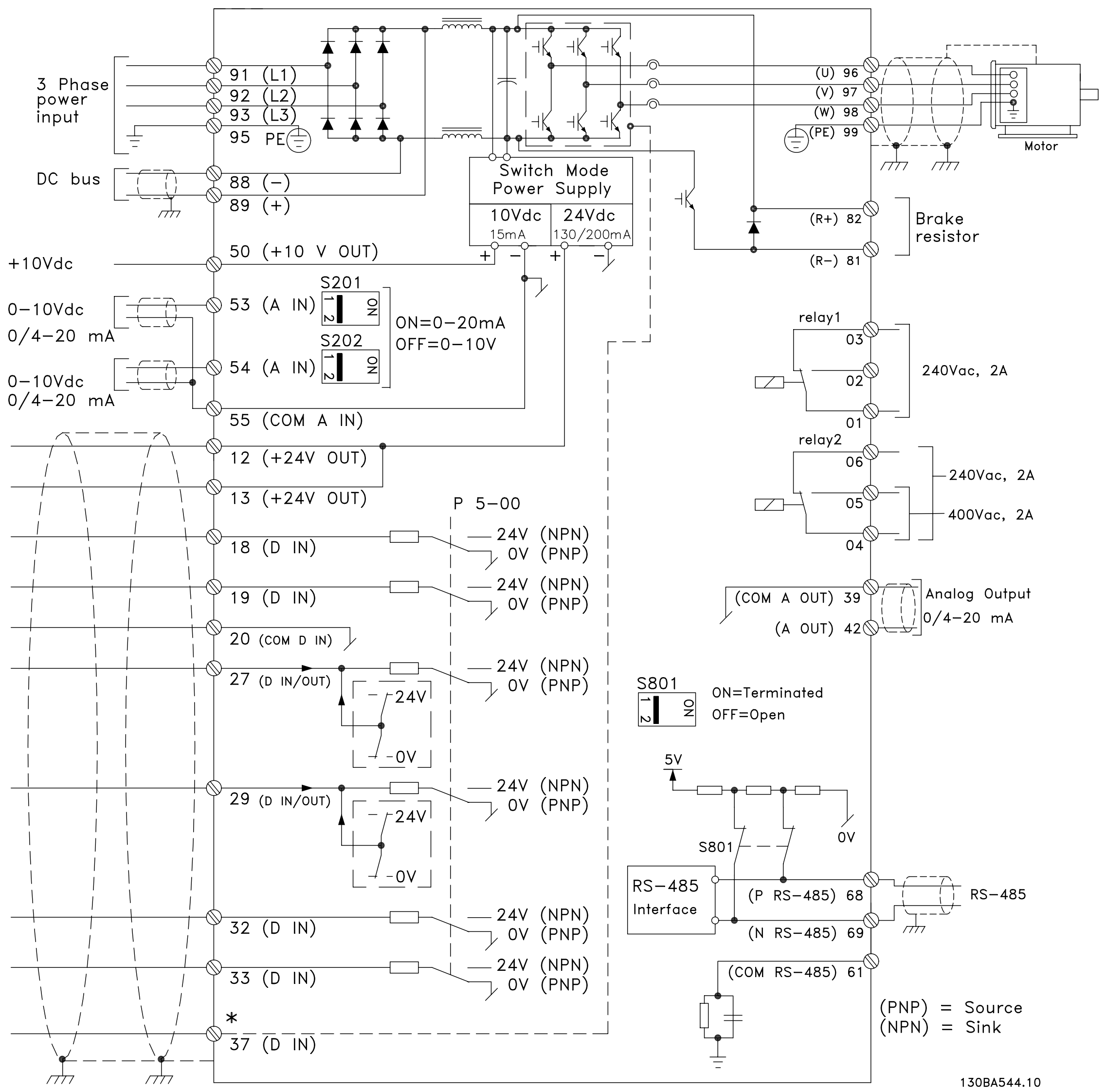


Figure 5.20: Diagram showing all electrical terminals. (Terminal 37 present for units with safe stop function only.)

In rare cases, and depending on the installation, very long control cables and analog signals may result in 50/60 Hz ground loops due to noise from line power supply cables.

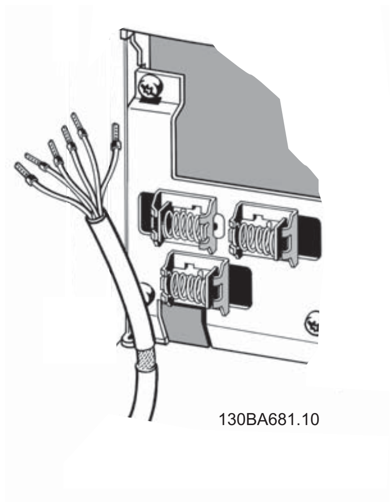
If this occurs, you may have to break the shield or insert a 100 nF capacitor between shield and chassis.

The digital and analog inputs and outputs must be connected separately to the adjustable frequency drive common inputs (terminal 20, 55, 39) to prevent ground currents from both groups from affecting other groups. For example, switching on the digital input may disturb the analog input signal.

NOTE!
Control cables must be shielded/armored.

1. Use a clamp from the accessory bag to connect the shield to the adjustable frequency drive decoupling plate for control cables.

See section entitled *Grounding of Shielded/Armored Control Cables* for the correct termination of control cables.



5.2.13 Switches S201, S202, and S801

Switches S201 (A53) and S202 (A54) are used to select a current (0–20 mA) or a voltage (0–10 V) configuration of the analog input terminals 53 and 54 respectively.

Switch S801 (BUS TER.) can be used to enable termination on the RS-485 port (terminals 68 and 69).

See drawing *Diagram showing all electrical terminals* in section *Electrical Installation.*

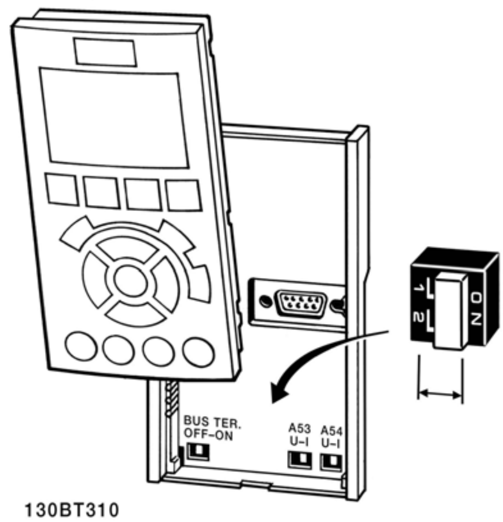
Default setting:

S201 (A53) = OFF (voltage input)

S202 (A54) = OFF (voltage input)

S801 (Bus termination) = OFF

NOTE!
It is recommended to only change switch position at power off.



5.3 Final Set-Up and Test

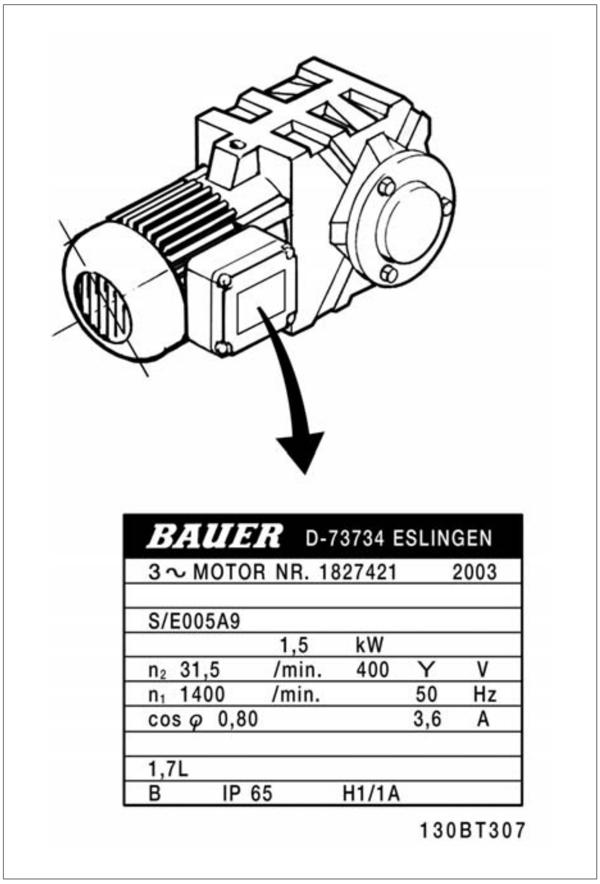
To test the set-up and ensure that the adjustable frequency drive is running, follow these steps.

Step 1. Locate the motor nameplate

The motor is either star- (Y) or delta-connected (Δ). This information is located on the motor nameplate data.

Step 2. Enter the motor nameplate data in this parameter list.
To access this list, first press the [QUICK MENU] key, then select "Q2 Quick Set-up".

1.	Motor Power [kW] or Motor Power [HP]	par. 1-20 *Motor Power [kW]* par. 1-21 *Motor Power [HP]*
2.	Motor Voltage	par. 1-22 *Motor Voltage*
3.	Motor Frequency	par. 1-23 *Motor Frequency*
4.	Motor Current	par. 1-24 *Motor Current*
5.	Motor Nominal Speed	par. 1-25 *Motor Nominal Speed*



Step 3. Activate the Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)
Performing an AMA will ensure optimum performance. The AMA measures the values from the motor model equivalent diagram.

1. Connect terminal 27 to terminal 12 or set par. 5-12 *Terminal 27 Digital Input* to 'No function' (par. 5-12 *Terminal 27 Digital Input* [0])
2. Activate the AMA par. 1-29 *Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)*.
3. Choose between complete or reduced AMA. If an LC filter is mounted, run only the reduced AMA, or remove the LC filter during the AMA procedure.
4. Press the [OK] key. The display shows "Press [Hand on] to start".
5. Press the [Hand on] key. A progress bar indicates if the AMA is in progress.

Stop the AMA during operation

1. Press the [OFF] key - the adjustable frequency drive enters into alarm mode and the display shows that the AMA was terminated by the user.

Successful AMA

1. The display shows “Press [OK] to finish AMA”.
2. Press the [OK] key to exit the AMA state.

Unsuccessful AMA

1. The adjustable frequency drive enters into alarm mode. A description of the alarm can be found in the *Troubleshooting* section.
2. "Report Value" in the [Alarm Log] shows the last measuring sequence carried out by the AMA before the adjustable frequency drive entered alarm mode. This number along with the description of the alarm will assist you in troubleshooting. If you contact Danfoss Service, make sure to mention number and alarm description.

Unsuccessful AMA is often caused by incorrectly registered motor name plate data or too big difference between the motor power size and the adjustable frequency drive power size.

Step 4. Set speed limit and ramp time

Set up the desired limits for speed and ramp time.

Minimum Reference	par. 3-02 *Minimum Reference*
Maximum Reference	par. 3-03 *Maximum Reference*

Motor Speed Low Limit	par. 4-11 *Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]* or par. 4-12 *Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]*
Motor Speed High Limit	par. 4-13 *Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]* or par. 4-14 *Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]*

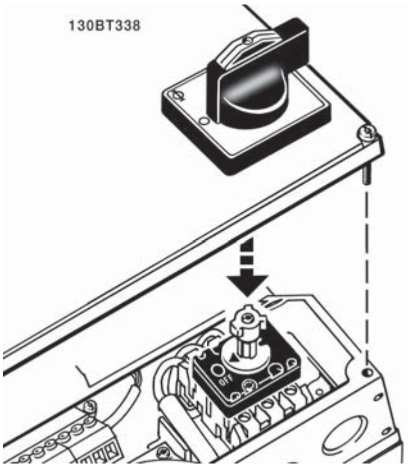
Ramp-up Time 1 [s]	par. 3-41 *Ramp 1 Ramp-up Time*
Ramp-down Time 1 [s]	par. 3-42 *Ramp 1 Ramp-down Time*

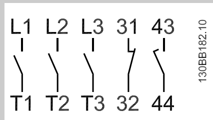
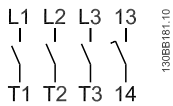
5.4 Additional Connections

5.4.1 Line Power Disconnectors

Assembling of IP55 / NEMA Type 12 (A5 housing) with line power disconnector

The line power switch is placed on left side on frame sizes B1, B2, C1 and C2 . The line power switch on A5 frames is placed on right side



Frame size:	Type:	Terminal connections:
A5	Kraus&Naimer KG20A T303	
B1	Kraus&Naimer KG64 T303	
B2	Kraus&Naimer KG64 T303	
C1 50 hp [37 kW]	Kraus&Naimer KG100 T303	
C1 60–75 hp [45–55 kW]	Kraus&Naimer KG105 T303	
C2 100 hp [75 kW]	Kraus&Naimer KG160 T303	
C2 125 hp [90 kW]	Kraus&Naimer KG250 T303	

5.4.2 Line Power Disconnectors - Frame Size D, E and F

Frame size	Power & Voltage	Type
D1/D3	P110-P132 380–480 V & P110-P160 525–690 V	ABB OETL-NF200A or OT200U12-91
D2/D4	P160-P250 380–480 V & P200-P400 525–690 V	ABB OETL-NF400A or OT400U12-91
E1/E2	P315 380–480 V & P450-P630 525–690 V	ABB OETL-NF600A
E1/E2	P355-P450 380–480 V	ABB OETL-NF800A
F3	P500 380–480 V & P710-P800 525–690 V	Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP
F3	P560-P710 380–480 V & P900 525–690 V	Merlin Gerin NRK36000S20AAYP
F4	P800-P1M0 380–480 V & P1M0-P1M4 525–690 V	Merlin Gerin NRK36000S20AAYP

5.4.3 F Frame circuit breakers

Frame size	Power & Voltage	Type
F3	P500 380–480 V & P710-P800 525–690 V	Merlin Gerin NPJF36120U31AABSCYP
F3	P630-P710 380–480 V & P900 525–690 V	Merlin Gerin NRJF36200U31AABSCYP
F4	P800 380–480 V & P1M0-P1M2 525–690 V	Merlin Gerin NRJF36200U31AABSCYP
F4	P1M0 380–480 V	Merlin Gerin NRJF36250U31AABSCYP

5.4.4 F Frame Line Power Contactors

Frame size	Power & Voltage	Type
F3	P500-P560 380–480 V & P710-P900 525–690 V	Eaton XTCE650N22A
F3	P630 380–480 V	Eaton XTCE820N22A
F3	P710 380–480 V	Eaton XTCEC14P22B
F4	P1M0 525–690 V	Eaton XTCE820N22A
F4	P800-P1M0 380–480 V & P1M4 525–690 V	Eaton XTCEC14P22B

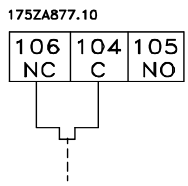
5.4.5 Brake Resistor Temperature Switch

Frame size D-E-F
Torque: 0.5–0.6 Nm (5 in-lbs)
Screw size: M3

This input can be used to monitor the temperature of an externally connected brake resistor. If the input between 104 and 106 is established, the adjustable frequency drive will trip on warning / alarm 27, "Brake IGBT". If the connection is closed between 104 and 105, the adjustable frequency drive will trip on warning/alarm 27, "Brake IGBT".
Normally closed: 104-106 (factory-installed jumper)
Normally open: 104-105

Terminal No.	Function
106, 104, 105	Brake resistor temperature switch.

If the temperature of the brake resistor gets too high and the thermal switch drops out, the adjustable frequency drive will stop braking. The motor will start coasting.
A KLIXON switch must be installed that is 'normally closed'. If this function is not used, 106 and 104 must be short-circuited together.



5.4.6 External Fan Supply

Frame size D-E-F

If the adjustable frequency drive is supplied by DC or if the fan must run independently of the power supply, an external power supply can be applied. The connection is made on the power card.

Terminal No.	Function
100, 101	Auxiliary supply S, T
102, 103	Internal supply S, T

The connector located on the power card provides the AC line voltage connection for the cooling fans. The fans are factory-equipped to be supplied from a common AC line (jumpers between 100-102 and 101-103). If an external supply is needed, the jumpers are removed and the supply is connected to terminals 100 and 101. A 5 Amp fuse should be used for protection. In UL applications, this should be a LittleFuse KLK-5 or equivalent.

5.4.7 Relay output

Relay 1

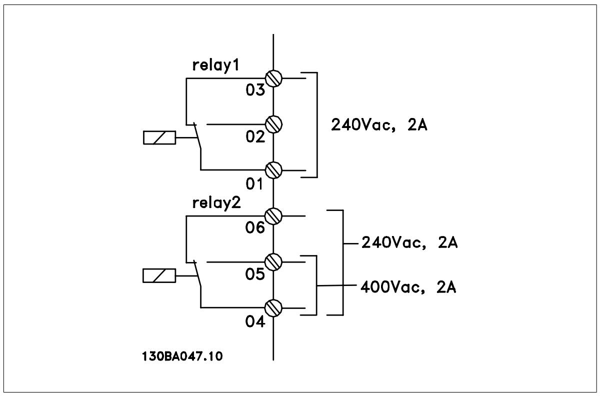
- Terminal 01: common
- Terminal 02: normal open 240 V AC
- Terminal 03: normal closed 240 V AC

Relay 1 and relay 2 are programmed in par. 5-40 *Function Relay*, par. 5-41 *On Delay, Relay*, and par. 5-42 *Off Delay, Relay*.

Additional relay outputs by using option module MCB 105.

Relay 2

- Terminal 04: common
- Terminal 05: normal open 400 V AC
- Terminal 06: normal closed 240 V AC



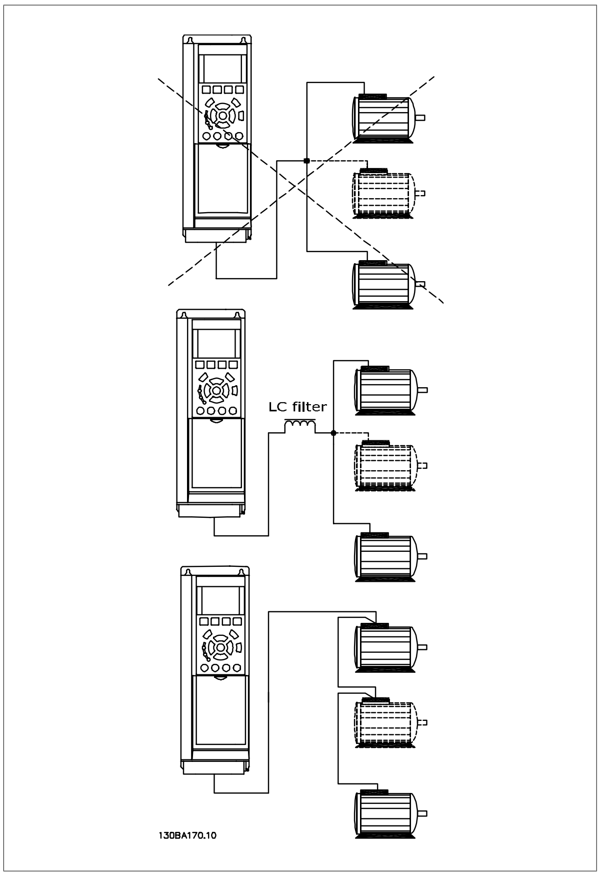
5.4.8 Parallel Connection of Motors

The adjustable frequency drive can control several parallel-connected motors. The total current consumption of the motors must not exceed the rated output current I_{INV} for the adjustable frequency drive.

When motors are connected in parallel, par. 1-29 *Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)* cannot be used.

Problems may arise at start and at low RPM values if motor sizes are widely different because small motors' relatively high ohmic resistance in the stator calls for a higher voltage at start and at low RPM values.

The electronic thermal relay (ETR) of the adjustable frequency drive cannot be used as motor protection for the individual motor of systems with parallel-connected motors. Provide further motor protection with, for example, thermistors in each motor or individual thermal relays (circuit breakers are not a suitable means of protection).



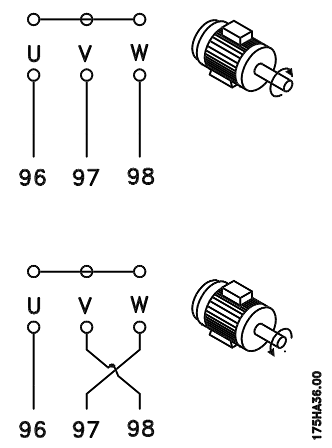
5.4.9 Direction of Motor Rotation

The default setting is clockwise rotation with the adjustable frequency drive output connected as follows.

Terminal 96 connected to U-phase
Terminal 97 connected to V-phase
Terminal 98 connected to W-phase

The direction of motor rotation is changed by switching two motor phases.

Motor rotation check can be performed using par. 1-28 *Motor Rotation Check* and following the steps shown in the display.



5.4.10 Motor Thermal Protection

The electronic thermal relay in the adjustable frequency drive has received the UL-approval for single motor protection, when par. 1-90 *Motor Thermal Protection* is set for *ETR Trip* and par. 1-24 *Motor Current* is set to the rated motor current (see motor nameplate).

5.4.11 Motor Insulation

For motor cable lengths ≤ than the maximum cable length listed in the General Specifications tables, the following motor insulation ratings are recommended because the peak voltage can be up to twice the DC link voltage, 2.8 times the AC line voltage due to transmission line effects in the motor cable. If a motor has lower insulation rating, it is recommended to use a du/dt or sine-wave filter.

Nominal AC Line Voltage	Motor Insulation
U_N ≤ 420 V	Standard U_{LL} = 1300 V
420 V < U_N ≤ 500 V	Reinforced U_{LL} = 1600 V
500 V < U_N ≤ 600 V	Reinforced U_{LL} = 1800 V
600 V < U_N ≤ 690 V	Reinforced U_{LL} = 2000 V

5.4.12 Motor Bearing Currents

It is generally recommended that motors of a rating 150 hp [110 kW] or higher operating via adjustable frequency drives should have NDE (Non-Drive End) insulated bearings installed to eliminate circulating bearing currents due to the physical size of the motor. To minimize DE (Drive End) bearing and shaft currents proper grounding of the drive, motor, driven machine, and motor to the driven machine is required. Although failure due to bearing currents is low and very dependent on many different items, for security of operation the following are mitigation strategies which can be implemented.

Standard Mitigation Strategies:

1. Use an insulated bearing
2. Apply rigorous installation procedures

   Ensure the motor and load motor are aligned

   Strictly follow the EMC Installation guideline

   Reinforce the PE so the high frequency impedance is lower in the PE than the input power leads.

   Provide a good high frequency connection between the motor and the adjustable frequency drive for instance by shielded cable which has a 360° connection in the motor and the adjustable frequency drive.

   Make sure that the impedance from adjustable frequency drive to building ground is lower that the grounding impedance of the machine. This can be difficult for pumps- Make a direct ground connection between the motor and load motor.
3. Apply conductive lubrication
4. Try to ensure the line voltage is balanced to ground. This can be difficult for IT, TT, TN-CS or Grounded leg systems
5. Use an insulated bearing as recommended by the motor manufacturer (note: Motors from reputable manufacturers will typically have these fitted as standard in motors of this size)

If found to be necessary and after consultation with Danfoss:

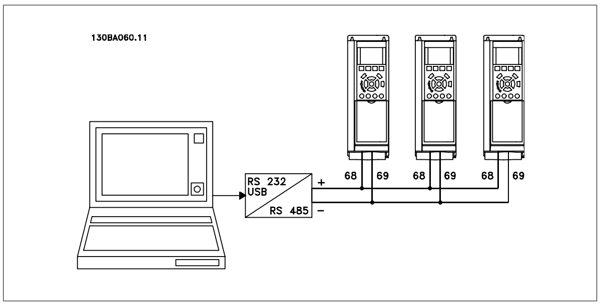
6. Lower the IGBT switching frequency
7. Modify the inverter waveform, 60° AVM vs. SFAVM
8. Install a shaft grounding system or use an isolating coupling between motor and load
9. Use minimum speed settings, if possible.
10. Use a dU/dt or sinus filter

5.5 Installation of misc. connections

5.5.1 RS 485 Bus Connection

One or more adjustable frequency drives can be connected to a control (or master) using the RS-485 standardized interface. Terminal 68 is connected to the P signal (TX+, RX+), while terminal 69 is connected to the N signal (TX-, RX-).

If more than one adjustable frequency drive is connected to a master, use parallel connections.



In order to avoid potential equalizing currents in the shield, ground the cable screen via terminal 61, which is connected to the frame via an RC link.

Bus termination

The RS-485 bus must be terminated by a resistor network at both ends. For this purpose, set switch S801 on the control card to "ON".
For more information, see the paragraph *Switches S201, S202, and S801*.

Communication protocol must be set to par. 8-30 *Protocol*.

5.5.2 How to connect a PC to the adjustable frequency drive

To control or program the adjustable frequency drive from a PC, install the PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10.
The PC is connected via a standard (host/device) USB cable, or via the RS-485 interface as shown in the VLT HVAC Drive *Design Guide, chapter How to Install > Installation of misc. connections*.

NOTE!
The USB connection is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals. The USB connection is connected to protection ground on the adjustable frequency drive. Use only an isolated laptop as PC connection to the USB connector on the adjustable frequency drive.

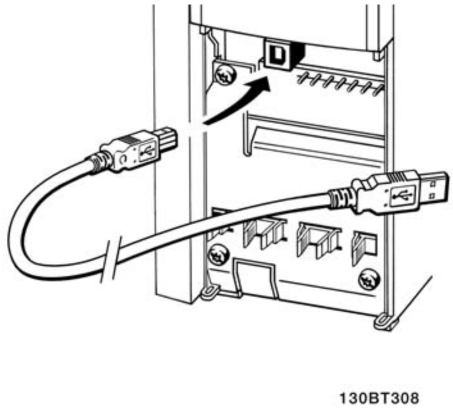


Figure 5.21: For control cable connections, see section on *Control Terminals*.

PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10
All drives are equipped with a serial communication port. We provide a PC tool for communication between PC and adjustable frequency drive, PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10.

MCT 10 Set-up Software
MCT 10 has been designed as an easy to use interactive tool for setting parameters in our adjustable frequency drives.
The PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10 will be useful for:

- Planning a communication network off-line. MCT 10 contains a complete adjustable frequency drive database
- Commissioning adjustable frequency drives on-line.
- Saving settings for all adjustable frequency drives.
- Replacing an adjustable frequency drive in a network.
- Expanding an existing network.
- Drives developed in the future will be fully supported.

The PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10 supports Profibus DP-V1 via a master class 2 connection. This makes it possible to access online read/write parameters in an adjustable frequency drive via the Profibus network. This will eliminate the need for an extra communication network. See I*nstruction Manual, MG.33.Cx.yy and MN.90.Ex.yy* for more information about the features supported by the Profibus DP V1 functions.

Save Drive Settings:

1. Connect a PC to the unit via the USB com port.
2. Open PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10
3. Choose "Read from drive"
4. Choose "Save as"

All parameters are now stored on the PC.

Load Drive Settings:

1. Connect a PC to the unit via the USB com port.
2. Open PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10
3. Choose "Open"– stored files will be shown.
4. Open the appropriate file
5. Choose "Write to drive"

All parameter settings are now transferred to the adjustable frequency drive.

A separate manual for PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10 is available.

The PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10 modules
The following modules are included in the software package:

	MCT 10 Set-up Software Setting parameters Copy to and from adjustable frequency drives Documentation and print-out of parameter settings incl. diagrams
	Ext. User Interface Preventive Maintenance Schedule Clock settings Timed Action Programming Smart Logic Controller Set-up

Ordering number:
Please order your CD containing the PC-based Configuration Tool MCT 10 using code number 130B1000.

MCT 10 can also be downloaded from the Danfoss website: *http://www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Softwaredownload/DDPC+Software+Program.htm*.

MCT 31
The MCT 31 harmonic calculation PC tool enables easy estimation of the harmonic distortion in a given application. Both the harmonic distortion of Danfoss adjustable frequency drives as well as non-Danfoss adjustable frequency drives with different additional harmonic reduction devices, such as Danfoss AHF filters and 12-18 pulse rectifiers, can be calculated.

Ordering number:
Please order your CD containing the MCT 31 PC tool using code number 130B1031.

MCT 31 can also be downloaded from the Danfoss website: *http://www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Softwaredownload/DDPC+Software+Program.htm*.

5.6 Safety

5.6.1 High Voltage Test

Carry out a high voltage test by short-circuiting terminals U, V, W, L_1, L_2 and L_3. Energize maximum 2.15 kV DC for 380–500V adjustable frequency drives and 2.525 kV DC for 525–690 V adjustable frequency drives for one second between this short-circuit and the chassis.

When running high voltage tests of the entire installation, interrupt line power and the motor connection if the leakage currents are too high.

5.6.2 Safety Ground Connection

The adjustable frequency drive has a high leakage current and must be grounded appropriately for safety reasons according to EN 50178.

The ground leakage current from the adjustable frequency drive exceeds 3.5 mA. To ensure a good mechanical connection from the ground cable to the ground connection (terminal 95), the cable cross-section must be at least 0.016 in.^{2} [10 mm^2] or 2 rated ground wires terminated separately.

5.7 EMC-correct Installation

5.7.1 Electrical Installation - EMC Precautions

The following is a guideline for good engineering practice when installing adjustable frequency drives. Follow these guidelines to comply with EN 61800-3 *First environment*. If the installation is in EN 61800-3 *Second environment,* i.e., industrial networks, or in an installation with its own transformer, deviation from these guidelines is allowed but not recommended. See also paragraphs *CE Labeling, General Aspects of EMC Emission* and *EMC Test Results*.

Good engineering practice to ensure EMC-correct electrical installation:

- Use only braided shielded/armored motor cables and braided shielded/armored control cables. The shield should provide a minimum coverage of 80%. The shield material must be metal, not limited to, but typically, copper, aluminum, steel or lead. There are no special requirements for the line cable.
- Installations using rigid metal conduits are not required to contain shielded cable, but the motor cable must be installed in conduit separate from the control and line cables. Full connection of the conduit from the drive to the motor is required. The EMC performance of flexible conduits varies greatly, and information from the manufacturer must therefore be obtained.
- Connect the shield/armor/conduit to ground at both ends for motor cables as well as for control cables. In some cases, it is not possible to connect the shield at both ends. If so, connect the shield at the adjustable frequency drive. See also *Grounding of Braided Shielded/Armored Control Cables*.
- Avoid terminating the shield/armor with twisted ends (pigtails). It increases the high frequency impedance of the shield, which reduces its effectiveness at high frequencies. Use low impedance cable clamps or EMC cable connectors instead.
- Avoid using unshielded/unarmored motor or control cables inside cabinets housing the drive(s), whenever this can be avoided.

Leave the shield as close to the connectors as possible.

The illustration shows an example of an EMC-correct electrical installation of an IP 20 adjustable frequency drive. The adjustable frequency drive is fitted in an installation cabinet with an output contactor and connected to a PLC, which is installed in a separate cabinet. Other ways of performing the installation may result in an equally effective EMC performance, provided the above guidelines for engineering practice are followed.

If the installation is not carried out according to the guidelines, and if non-shielded cables and control wires are used, some emission requirements will not be fulfilled, although the immunity requirements will be. See the paragraph *EMC test results*.

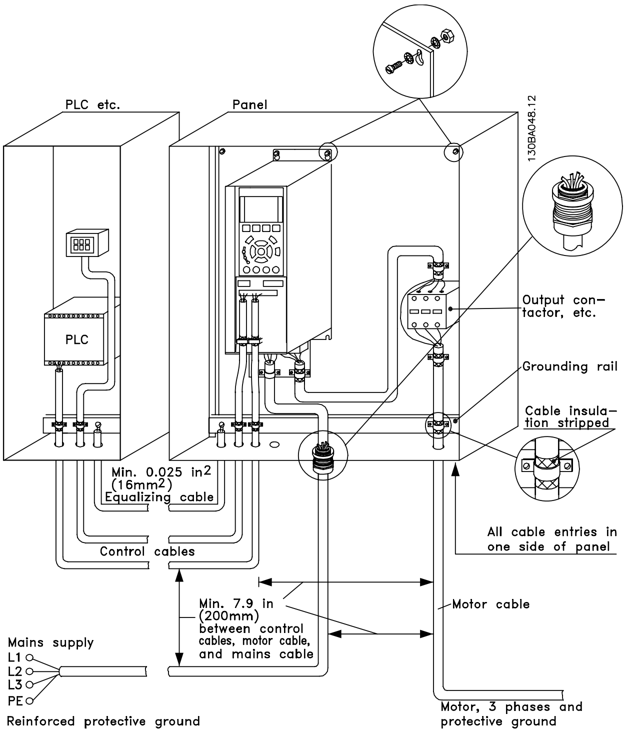


Figure 5.22: EMC-compliant electrical installation of an adjustable frequency drive in a cabinet.

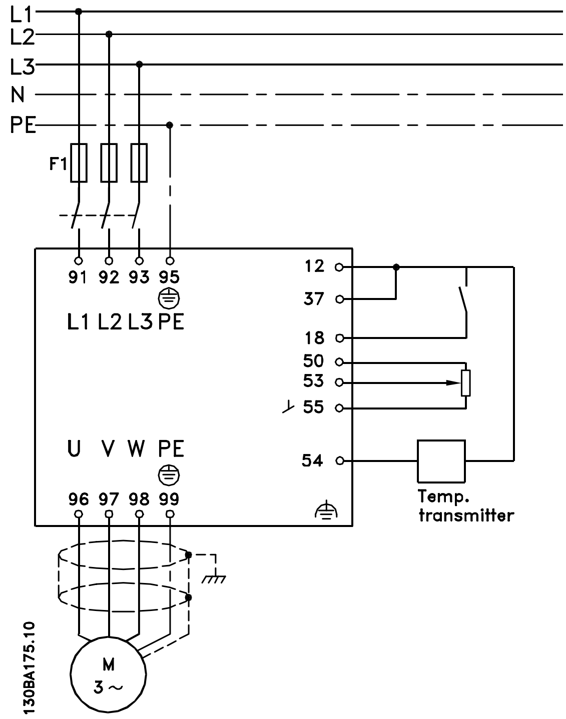


Figure 5.23: Electrical connection diagram.

5

5.7.2 Use of EMC-correct Cables

Danfoss recommends braided shielded/armored cables to optimize EMC immunity of the control cables and the EMC emission from the motor cables.

The ability of a cable to reduce the in and outgoing radiation of electric noise depends on the transfer impedance (Z_T). The shield of a cable is normally designed to reduce the transfer of electric noise; however, a shield with a lower transfer impedance (Z_T) value is more effective than a shield with a higher transfer impedance (Z_T).

Transfer impedance (Z_T) is rarely stated by cable manufacturers, but it is often possible to estimate transfer impedance (Z_T) by assessing the physical design of the cable.

Transfer impedance (Z_T) can be assessed on the basis of the following factors:

- The conductibility of the shield material.
- The contact resistance between the individual shield conductors.
- The shield coverage, i.e., the physical area of the cable covered by the shield - often stated as a percentage value.
- Shield type, i.e., braided or twisted pattern.

a. Aluminum-clad with copper wire.

b. Twisted copper wire or armored steel wire cable.

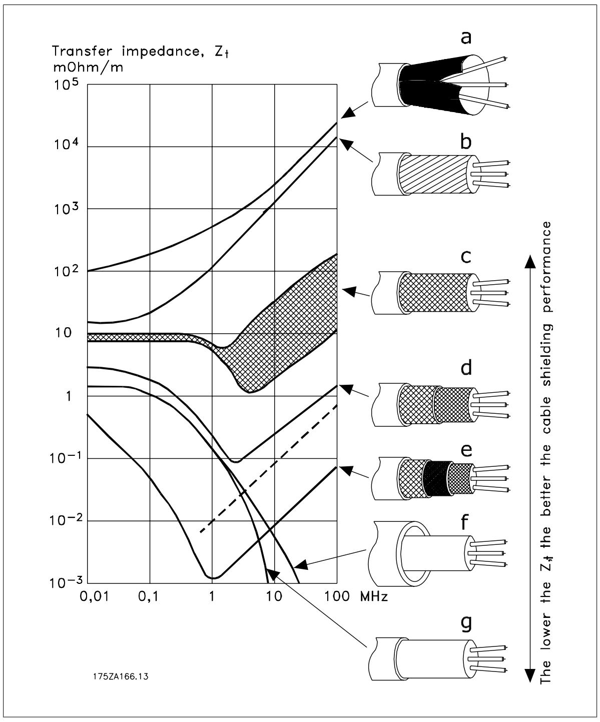
c. Single-layer braided copper wire with varying percentage shield coverage.
This is the typical Danfoss reference cable.

d. Double-layer braided copper wire.

e. Twin layer of braided copper wire with a magnetic, shielded/armored intermediate layer.

f. Cable that runs in copper tube or steel tube.

g. Lead cable with 0.43 in [1.1 mm] wall thickness.



5.7.3 Grounding of Shielded/Armored Control Cables

Generally speaking, control cables must be braided and shielded/armored, and the shield must be connected by means of a cable clamp at both ends to the metal cabinet of the unit.

The drawing below indicates how correct grounding is carried out and what to do if in doubt.

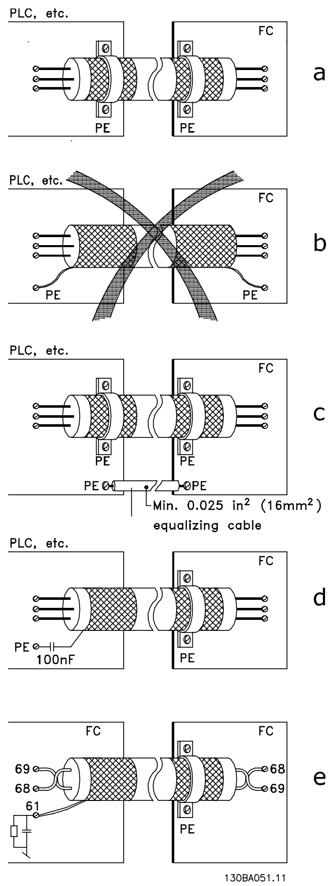
a. **Correct grounding**
Control cables and cables for serial communication must be fitted with cable clamps at both ends to ensure the best possible electrical contact.

b. **Wrong grounding**
Do not use twisted cable ends (pigtails). They increase the shield impedance at high frequencies.

c. **Protection with respect to ground potential between PLC and adjustable frequency drive**
If the ground potential between the adjustable frequency drive and the PLC (etc.) is different, electric noise may occur that will disturb the entire system. Solve this problem by fitting an equalizing cable next to the control cable. Minimum cable cross-section: 0.025 in^2 [16 mm^2].

d. **For 50/60 Hz ground loops**
If very long control cables are used, 50/60 Hz ground loops may occur. Solve this problem by connecting one end of the shield to ground via a 100nF capacitor (keeping leads short).

e. **Cables for serial communication**
Eliminate low-frequency noise currents between two adjustable frequency drives by connecting one end of the shield to terminal 61. This terminal is grounded via an internal RC link. Use twisted-pair cables to reduce the differential mode interference between the conductors.



5.8.1 Residual Current Device

You can use RCD relays, multiple protective grounding or grounding as extra protection, provided that local safety regulations are complied with.
If a ground fault appears, a DC content may develop in the faulty current.
If RCD relays are used, you must observe local regulations. Relays must be suitable for protection of 3-phase equipment with a bridge rectifier and for a brief discharge on power-up see section *Ground Leakage Current* for further information.

5

6 Application Examples

6.1.1 Start/Stop

Terminal 18 = start/stop par. 5-10 *Terminal 18 Digital Input* [8] *Start*
Terminal 27 = No operation par. 5-12 *Terminal 27 Digital Input* [0] *No operation* (Default *coast inverse*

Par. 5-10 *Terminal 18 Digital Input* = *Start* (default)

Par. 5-12 *Terminal 27 Digital Input* = *coast inverse* (default)

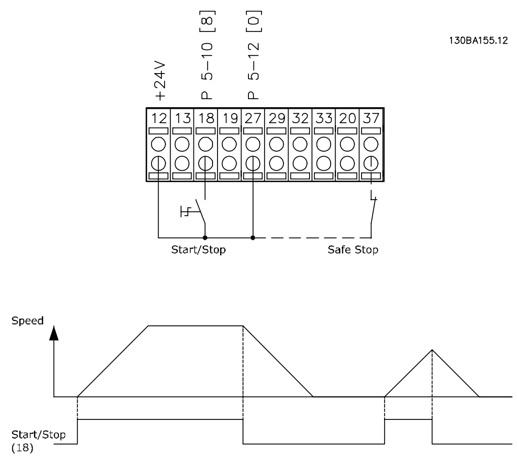


Figure 6.1: Terminal 37: Available only with Safe Stop Function!

6

6.1.2 Pulse Start/Stop

Terminal 18 = start/stop par. 5-10 *Terminal 18 Digital Input* [9] *Latched start*
Terminal 27= Stop par. 5-12 *Terminal 27 Digital Input* [6] *Stop inverse*

Par. 5-10 *Terminal 18 Digital Input* = *Latched start*

Par. 5-12 *Terminal 27 Digital Input* = *Stop inverse*

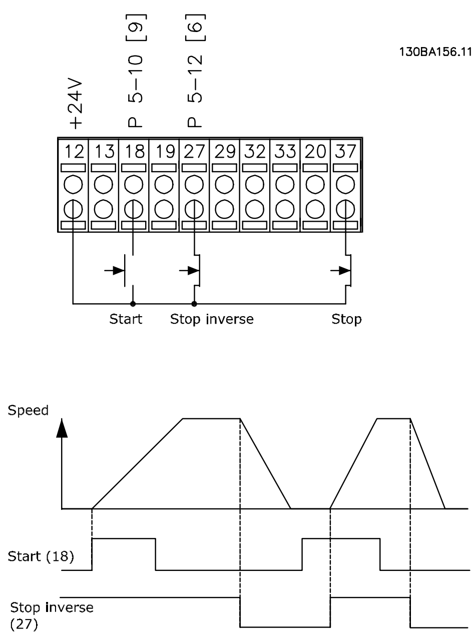


Figure 6.2: Terminal 37: Available only with Safe Stop Function!

6.1.3 Potentiometer Reference

Voltage reference via a potentiometer.

par. 3-15 *Reference 1 Source* [1] = *Analog Input 53*

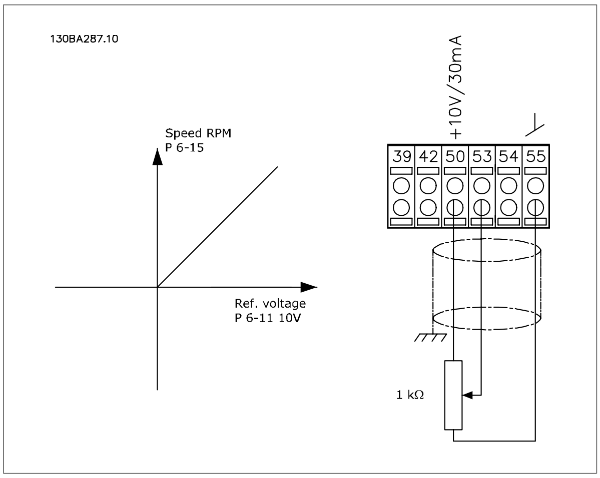
par. 6-10 *Terminal 53 Low Voltage* = 0 Volt

par. 6-11 *Terminal 53 High Voltage* = 10 Volt

par. 6-14 *Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. Value* = 0 RPM

par. 6-15 *Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value* = 1500 RPM

Switch S201 = OFF (U)



6.1.4 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)

AMA is an algorithm to measure the electrical motor parameters on a motor at standstill. This means that AMA itself does not supply any torque.
AMA is useful when commissioning systems and optimizing the adjustment of the adjustable frequency drive to the applied motor. This feature is particularly used where the default setting does not apply to the connected motor.
Par. 1-29 *Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)* allows a choice of complete AMA with determination of all electrical motor parameters or reduced AMA with determination of the stator resistance Rs only.
The duration of a total AMA varies from a few minutes on small motors to more than 15 minutes on large motors.

Limitations and preconditions:

- For the AMA to determine the motor parameters optimally, enter the correct motor nameplate data in par. 1-20 *Motor Power [kW]* to par. 1-28 *Motor Rotation Check*.
- For the best adjustment of the adjustable frequency drive, carry out AMA on a cold motor. Repeated AMA runs may lead to a heating of the motor, which results in an increase of the stator resistance, Rs. Normally, this is not critical.
- AMA can only be carried out if the rated motor current is minimum 35% of the rated output current of the adjustable frequency drive. AMA can be carried out on up to one oversize motor.
- It is possible to carry out a reduced AMA test with a sine-wave filter installed. Avoid carrying out a complete AMA with a sine-wave filter. If an overall setting is required, remove the sine-wave filter while running a total AMA. After completion of the AMA, reinsert the sine-wave filter.
- If motors are coupled in parallel, use only reduced AMA if any.
- Avoid running a complete AMA when using synchronous motors. If synchronous motors are applied, run a reduced AMA and manually set the extended motor data. The AMA function does not apply to permanent magnet motors.
- The adjustable frequency drive does not produce motor torque during an AMA. During an AMA, it is imperative that the application does not force the motor shaft to run, which is known to happen with, e.g., wind milling in ventilation systems. This disturbs the AMA function.

6.1.5 Smart Logic Control

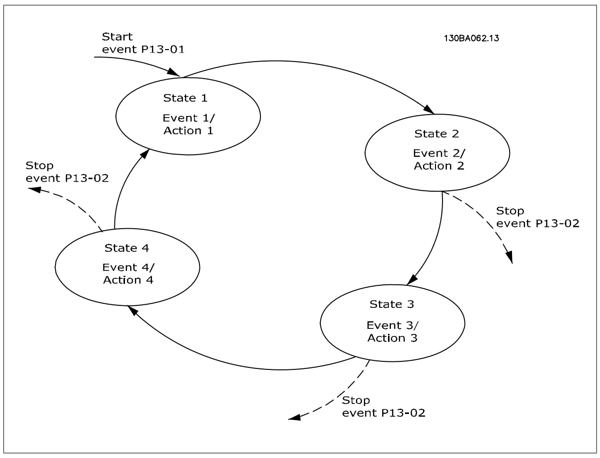
New useful facility in the VLT HVAC Drive adjustable frequency drive is the Smart Logic Control (SLC).
In applications where a PLC is generating a simple sequence the SLC may take over elementary tasks from the main control.
SLC is designed to act from event send to or generated in the adjustable frequency drive. The adjustable frequency drive will then perform the pre-programmed action.

6.1.6 Smart Logic Control Programming

The Smart Logic Control (SLC) is essentially a sequence of user defined actions (see par. 13-52 *SL Controller Action*) executed by the SLC when the associated user defined *event* (see par. 13-51 *SL Controller Event*) is evaluated as TRUE by the SLC.
Events and *actions* are each numbered and are linked in pairs called states. This means that when *event [1]* is fulfilled (attains the value TRUE), *action [1]* is executed. After this, the conditions of *event [2]* will be evaluated and if evaluated TRUE, *action [2]*will be executed and so on. Events and actions are placed in array parameters.

Only one *event* will be evaluated at any time. If an *event* is evaluated as FALSE, nothing happens (in the SLC) during the present scan interval and no other *events* will be evaluated. This means that when the SLC starts, it evaluates *event [1]* (and only *event [1]*) each scan interval. Only when *event [1]* is evaluated TRUE, the SLC executes *action [1]* and starts evaluating *event [2]*.

It is possible to program from 0 to 20 *events* and *actions*. When the last *event / action* has been executed, the sequence starts over again from *event [1] / action [1]*. The figure shows an example with three *events / actions*



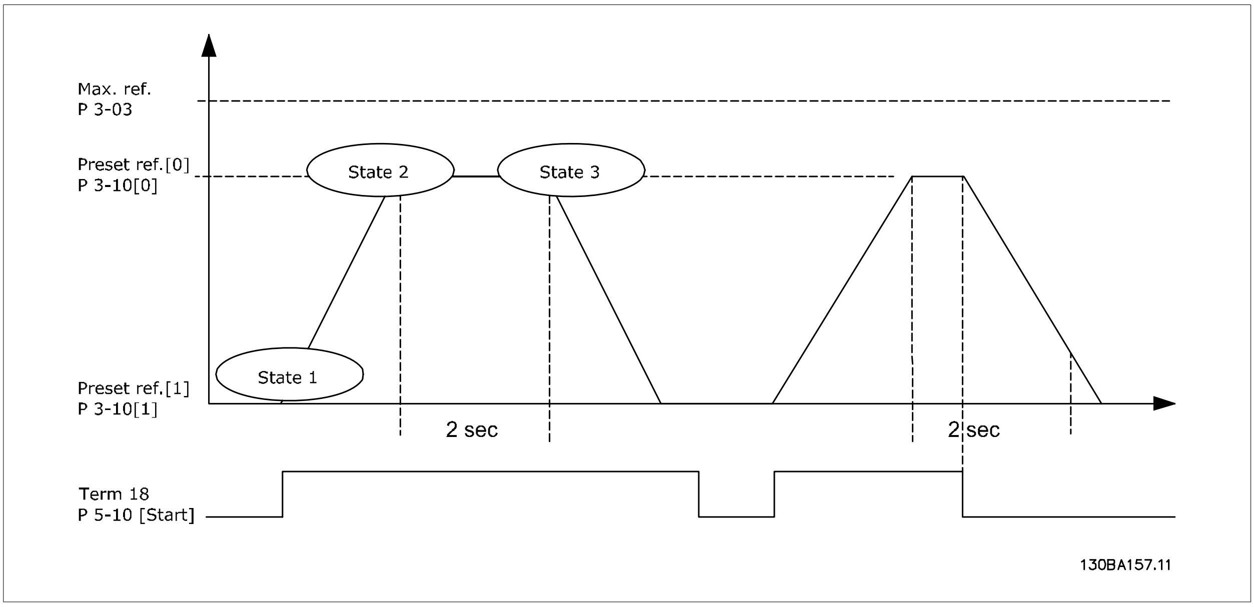
6

6

6.1.7 SLC Application Example

One sequence 1:

Start – ramp up – run at reference speed 2 sec – ramp down and hold shaft until stop.



Set the ramping times in par. 3-41 *Ramp 1 Ramp-up Time* and par. 3-42 *Ramp 1 Ramp-down Time* to the wanted times

$$t_{ramp} = \frac{t_{acc} \times n_{norm}\,(par.\ 1-25)}{ref\,[RPM]}$$

Set term 27 to *No Operation* (par. 5-12 *Terminal 27 Digital Input*)

Set Preset reference 0 to first preset speed (par. 3-10 *Preset Reference* [0]) in percentage of Max reference speed (par. 3-03 *Maximum Reference*). Ex.: 60%

Set preset reference 1 to second preset speed (par. 3-10 *Preset Reference* [1] Ex.: 0% (zero).

Set the timer 0 for constant running speed in par. 13-20 *SL Controller Timer* [0]. Ex.: 2 sec.

Set Event 1 in par. 13-51 *SL Controller Event* [1] to *True* [1]

Set Event 2 in par. 13-51 *SL Controller Event* [2] to *On Reference* [4]

Set Event 3 in par. 13-51 *SL Controller Event* [3] to *Time Out 0* [30]

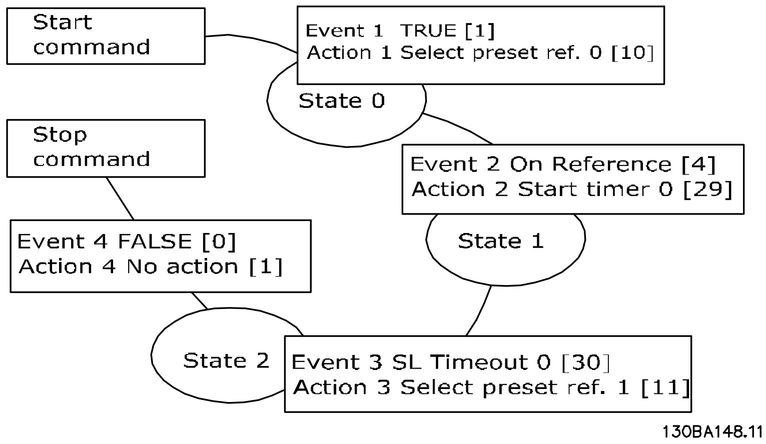
Set Event 4 in par. 13-51 *SL Controller Event* [1] to *False* [0]

Set Action 1 in par. 13-52 *SL Controller Action* [1] to *Select preset 0* [10]

Set Action 2 in par. 13-52 *SL Controller Action* [2] to *Start Timer 0* [29]

Set Action 3 in par. 13-52 *SL Controller Action* [3] to *Select preset 1* [11]

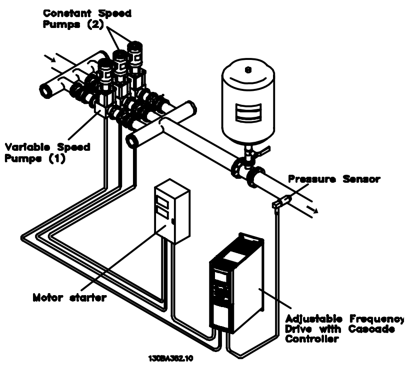
Set Action 4 in par. 13-52 *SL Controller Action* [4] to *No Action* [1]



Set the Smart Logic Control in par. 13-00 *SL Controller Mode* to ON.

Start / stop command is applied on terminal 18. If stop signal is applied the adjustable frequency drive will ramp down and go into free mode.

6.1.8 BASIC Cascade Controller



The BASIC Cascade Controller is used for pump applications where a certain pressure ("head") or level needs to be maintained over a wide dynamic range. Running a large pump at variable speed over a wide range is not an ideal solution because of low pump efficiency, and because there is a practical limit of about 25% rated full load speed for running a pump.

With the BASIC Cascade Controller, the adjustable frequency drive controls a variable speed motor as the variable speed pump (lead), and can stage up to two additional constant speed pumps to on and off. By varying the speed of the initial pump, variable speed control of the entire system is provided. This maintains constant pressure while eliminating pressure surges, resulting in reduced system stress and quieter operation in pumping systems.

<u>Fixed Lead Pump</u>

The motors must be of equal size. The BASIC cascade controller allows the adjustable frequency drive to control up to 3 equal size pumps using the drive's two built-in relays. When the variable pump (lead) is connected directly to the adjustable frequency drive, the other 2 pumps are controlled by the two built-in relays. When lead pump alternations is enabled, pumps are connected to the built-in relays and the adjustable frequency drive is capable of operating 2 pumps.

Lead Pump Alternation

The motors must be of equal size. This function makes it possible to cycle the adjustable frequency drive between the pumps in the system (maximum of 2 pumps). In this operation, the run time between pumps is equalized, thus reducing the required pump maintenance and increasing reliability and system lifetime. The alternation of the lead pump can take place at a command signal or at staging (adding another pump).

The command can be a manual alternation or an alternation event signal. If the alternation event is selected, the lead pump alternation takes place every time the event occurs. Selections include whenever an alternation timer expires, at a predefined time of day or when the lead pump goes into sleep mode. Staging is determined by the actual system load.

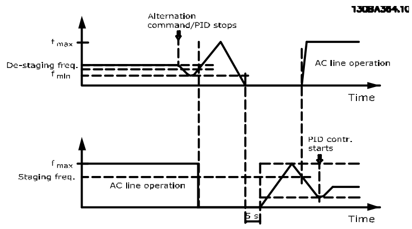
A separate parameter limits alternation only to take place if total capacity required is > 50%. Total pump capacity is determined as lead pump plus fixed-speed pumps capacities.

Bandwidth Management

In cascade control systems, to avoid frequent switching of fixed-speed pumps, the desired system pressure is kept within a bandwidth rather than at a constant level. Staging bandwidth provides the required bandwidth for operation. When a large and quick change in system pressure occurs, the override bandwidth overrides the staging bandwidth to prevent immediate response to a short duration pressure change. An override bandwidth timer can be programmed to prevent staging until the system pressure has stabilized and normal control has been established.

When the cascade controller is enabled and running normally and the adjustable frequency drive issues a trip alarm, the system head is maintained by staging and de-staging fixed-speed pumps. To prevent frequent staging and de-staging and minimize pressure fluctuations, a wider fixed-speed bandwidth is used instead of the staging bandwidth.

6.1.9 Pump Staging with Lead Pump Alternation



With lead pump alternation enabled, a maximum of two pumps are controlled. At an alternation command, the lead pump will ramp to minimum frequency (fmin), and after a delay, it will ramp to maximum frequency (fmax). When the speed of the lead pump reaches the de-staging frequency, the fixed-speed pump will be cut out (de-staged). The lead pump continues to ramp up and then ramps down to a stop and the two relays are cut out.

After a time delay, the relay for the fixed speed pump cuts in (staged) and this pump becomes the new lead pump. The new lead pump ramps up to maximum speed and then down to minimum speed when ramping down and reaching the staging frequency, the old lead pump is now cut in (staged) on line power as the new fixed-speed pump.

If the lead pump has been running at minimum frequency (fmin) for a programmed amount of time, with a fixed speed pump running, the lead pump contributes little to the system. When the programmed value of the timer expires, the lead pump is removed, avoiding a heat water-circulation problem.

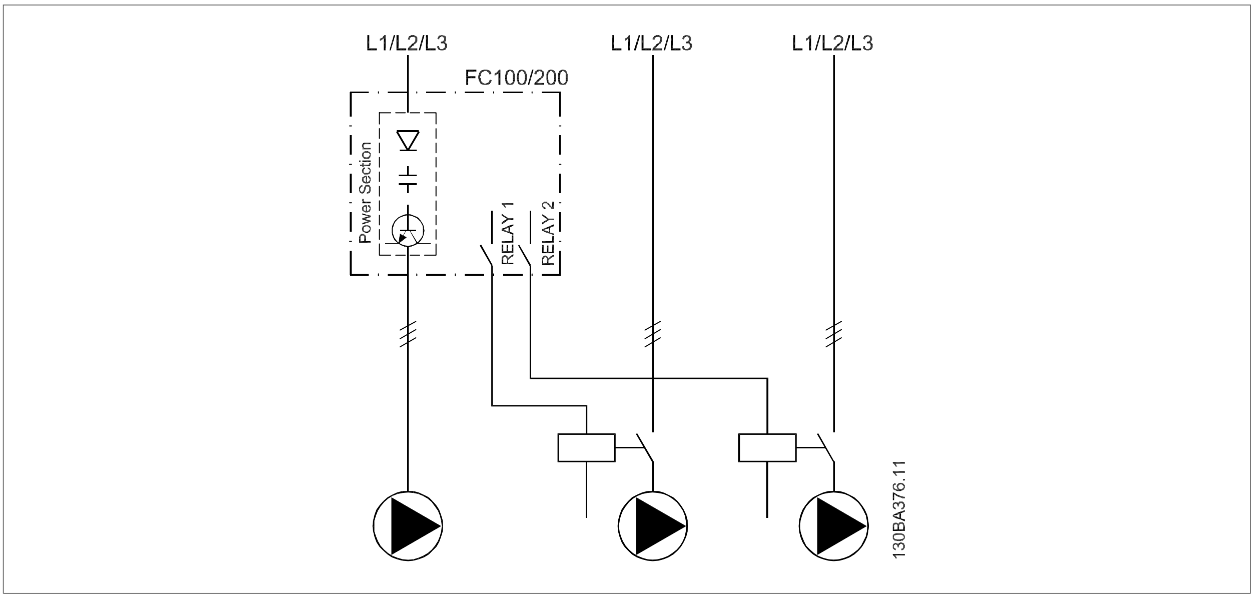
6.1.10 System Status and Operation

If the lead pump goes into sleep mode, the function is displayed on the LCP. It is possible to alternate the lead pump on a sleep mode condition.

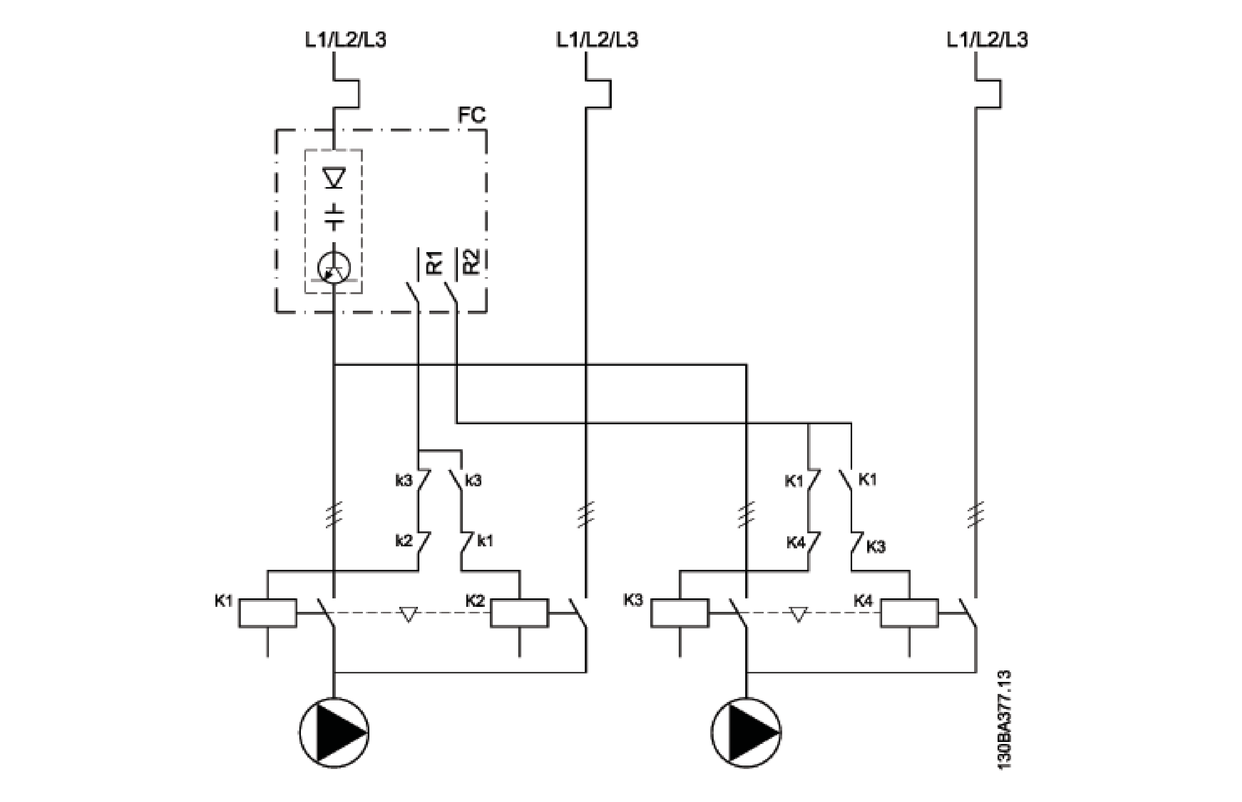
When the cascade controller is enabled, the operation status for each pump and the cascade controller is displayed on the LCP. Information displayed includes:

- Pumps Status, is a readout of the status for the relays assigned to each pump. The display shows pumps that are disabled, off, running on the adjustable frequency drive, or running on the line power/motor starter.
- Cascade Status, a readout of the status for the cascade controller. The display shows the cascade controller is disabled, all pumps are off, and emergency has stopped all pumps, all pumps are running, fixed-speed pumps are being staged/de-staged and lead pump alternation is occurring.
- De-stage at No-Flow ensures that all fixed-speed pumps are stopped individually until the no-flow status disappears.

6.1.11 Fixed Variable Speed Pump Wiring Diagram



6.1.12 Lead Pump Alternation Wiring Diagram

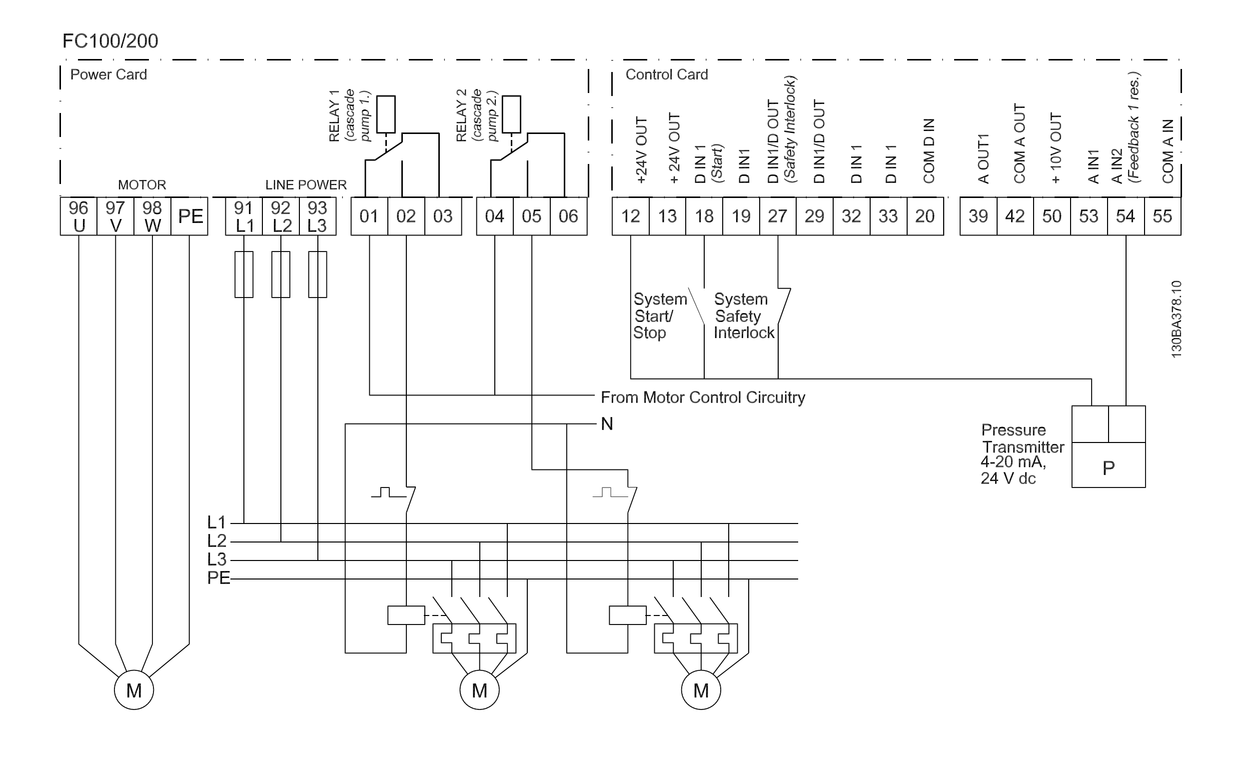


Every pump must be connected to two contactors (K1/K2 and K3/K4) with a mechanical interlock. Thermal relays or other motor protection devices must be applied according to local regulation and/or individual demands.

- RELAY 1 (R1) and RELAY 2 (R2) are the built-in relays in the adjustable frequency drive.
- When all relays are de-energized, the first built-in relay to be energized will cut in the contactor corresponding to the pump controlled by the relay. For example, RELAY 1 cuts in contactor K1, which becomes the lead pump.
- K1 blocks K2 via the mechanical interlock, preventing line power to be connected to the output of the adjustable frequency drive (via K1).
- Auxiliary break contact on K1 prevents K3 from cutting in.
- RELAY 2 controls contactor K4 for on/off control of the fixed-speed pump.
- At alternation, both relays de-energize, and RELAY 2 will be energized as the first relay.

6.1.13 Cascade Controller Wiring Diagram

The wiring diagram shows an example with the built-in BASIC cascade controller with one variable speed pump (lead) and two fixed speed pumps, a 4–20 mA transmitter and system safety interlock.



6.1.14 Start/Stop conditions

Commands assigned to digital inputs. See *Digital Inputs*, parameter group 5-1*.

	Variable speed pump (lead)	Fixed-speed pumps
Start (SYSTEM START /STOP)	Ramps up (if stopped and there is a demand)	Staging (if stopped and there is a demand)
Lead Pump Start	Ramps up if SYSTEM START is active	Not affected
Coast (EMERGENCY STOP)	Coast to stop	Cut out (built in relays are de-energized)
Safety Interlock	Coast to stop	Cut out (built in relays are de-energized)

Function of buttons on LCP:

	Variable speed pump (lead)	Fixed-speed pumps
Hand On	Ramps up (if stopped by a normal stop command) or stays in operation if already running	De-staging (if running)
Off	Ramps down	Ramps down
Auto On	Starts and stops according to commands sent via terminals or serial bus.	Staging/De-staging

7 RS-485 Installation and Set-up

7.1 RS-485 Installation and Set-up

7.1.1 Overview

RS-485 is a two-wire bus interface compatible with multi-drop network topology, i.e., nodes can be connected as a bus, or via drop cables from a common trunk line. A total of 32 nodes can be connected to one network segment.

Network segments are divided up by repeaters. Please note that each repeater functions as a node within the segment in which it is installed. Each node connected within a given network must have a unique node address across all segments.

Terminate each segment at both ends using either the termination switch (S801) of the adjustable frequency drives or a biased termination resistor network. Always use shielded twisted pair (STP) cable for bus cabling, and always follow good common installation practice.

Low-impedance ground connection of the shield at every node is very important, also at high frequencies. This can be achieved by connecting a large surface of the shield to ground, by means of a cable clamp or a conductive cable connector, for example. It may be necessary to apply potential-equalizing cables to maintain the same ground potential throughout the network, particularly in installations where there are long lengths of cable.

To prevent impedance mismatch, always use the same type of cable throughout the entire network. When connecting a motor to the adjustable frequency drive, always use shielded motor cable.

Cable: Shielded twisted pair (STP)
Impedance: 120 Ohm
Cable length: Max. 3,396 ft [1200 m] (including drop lines)
Max. 1,640 ft [500 m] station-to-station

7

7.1.2 Network Connection

Connect the adjustable frequency drive to the RS-485 network as follows (see also diagram):

1. Connect signal wires to terminal 68 (P+) and terminal 69 (N-) on the main control board of the adjustable frequency drive.
2. Connect the cable screen to the cable clamps.

NOTE!
Shielded, twisted-pair cables are recommended in order to reduce noise between conductors.

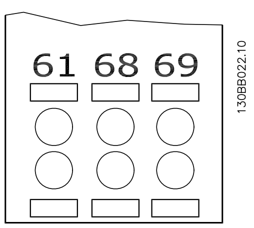


Figure 7.1: Network Terminal Connection

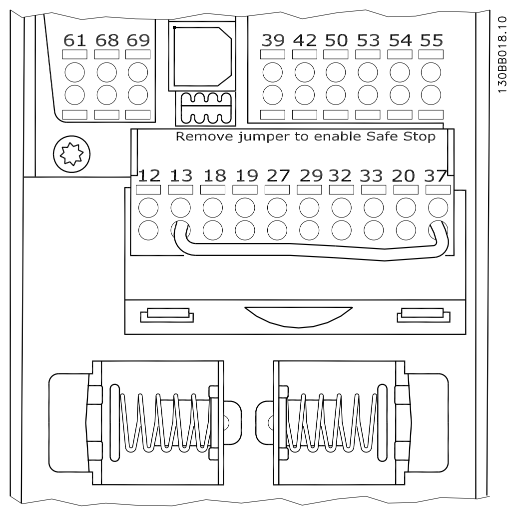


Figure 7.2: Control card terminals

7.1.3 Adjustable frequency drive hardware set-up

Use the terminator dip switch on the main control board of the adjustable frequency drive to terminate the RS-485 bus.

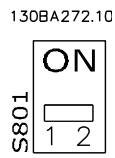


Figure 7.3: Terminator Switch Factory Setting

The factory setting for the dip switch is OFF.

7.1.4 Adjustable Frequency Drive Parameter Settings for Modbus Communication

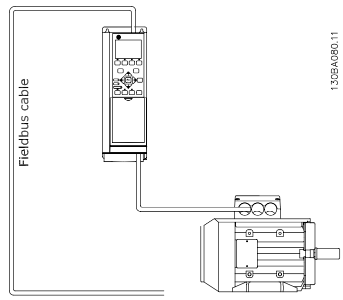
The following parameters apply to the RS-485 interface (FC port):

Parameter Number	Parameter name	Function
8-30	Protocol	Select the application protocol to run on the RS-485 interface
8-31	Address	Set the node address. Note: The address range depends on the protocol selected in par. 8-30 *Protocol*
8-32	Baud Rate	Set the baud rate. Note: The default baud rate depends on the protocol selected in par. 8-30 *Protocol*
8-33	PC port parity/Stop bits	Set the parity and number of stop bits. Note: The default selection depends on the protocol selected in par. 8-30 *Protocol*
8-35	Min. response delay	Specify a minimum delay time between receiving a request and transmitting a response. This can be used for overcoming modem turnaround delays.
8-36	Max. response delay	Specify a maximum delay time between transmitting a request and receiving a response.
8-37	Max. inter-char delay	Specify a maximum delay time between two received bytes to ensure timeout if transmission is interrupted.

7.1.5 EMC Precautions

The following EMC precautions are recommended in order to achieve interference-free operation of the RS-485 network.

NOTE!
Relevant national and local regulations, for example, regarding protective ground connection, must be observed. The RS-485 communication cable must be kept away from motor and brake resistor cables to avoid coupling of high frequency noise from one cable to another. Normally a distance of 8 in [200 mm] is sufficient, but keeping the greatest possible distance between the cables is generally recommended, especially where cables run in parallel over long distances. When crossing is unavoidable, the RS-485 cable must cross motor and brake resistor cables at an angle of 90 degrees.



7.2 Adjustable Frequency Protocol Overview

The adjustable frequency drive protocol, also referred to as adjustable frequency drive bus or standard bus, is the Danfoss standard serial communication bus. It defines an access technique according to the master-slave principle for communications via a serial bus.
One master and a maximum of 126 slaves can be connected to the bus. The individual slaves are selected by the master via an address character in the message. A slave itself can never transmit without first being requested to do so, and direct message transfer between the individual slaves is not possible. Communications occur in the half-duplex mode.
The master function cannot be transferred to another node (single-master system).

The physical layer is RS-485, thus utilizing the RS-485 port built into the adjustable frequency drive. The adjustable frequency protocol supports different message formats; a short format of 8 bytes for process data, and a long format of 16 bytes that also includes a parameter channel. A third message format is used for texts.

7.2.1 FC with Modbus RTU

The FC protocol provides access to the control word and bus reference of the adjustable frequency drive.

The control word allows the modbus master to control several important functions of the adjustable frequency drive:

- Start
- Stop of the adjustable frequency drive in various ways:
  Coast stop
  Quick stop
  DC Brake stop
  Normal (ramp) stop
- Reset after a fault trip
- Run at a variety of preset speeds
- Run in reverse
- Change of the active set-up
- Control of the two relays built into the adjustable frequency drive

The bus reference is commonly used for speed control. It is also possible to access the parameters, read their values, and where possible, write values to them. This permits a range of control options, including controlling the setpoint of the adjustable frequency drive when its internal PID controller is used.

7.3 Network Configuration

7.3.1 Adjustable Frequency Drive Set-up

Set the following parameters to enable the Adjustable Frequency protocol for the adjustable frequency drive.

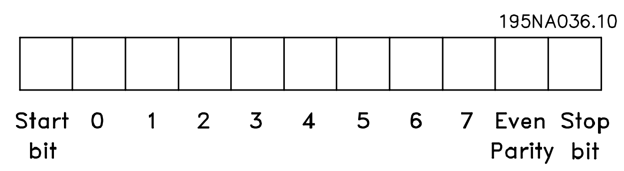
Parameter Number	Parameter Name	Setting
8-30	Protocol	FC
8-31	Address	1 - 126
8-32	Baud Rate	2400 - 115200
8-33	Parity/Stop bits	Even parity, 1 stop bit (default)

7.4 FC Protocol Message Framing Structure

7

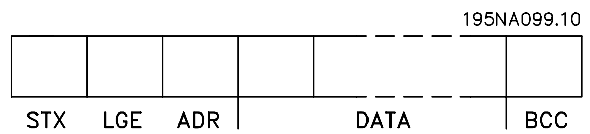
7.4.1 Content of a Character (byte)

Each character transferred begins with a start bit. Then 8 data bits are transferred, corresponding to a byte. Each character is secured via a parity bit, which is set at "1" when it reaches parity (i.e., when there is an equal number of 1’s in the 8 data bits and the parity bit in total). A character is completed by a stop bit, thus consisting of 11 bits in all.



7.4.2 Message Structure

Each message begins with a start character (STX)=02 Hex, followed by a byte denoting the message length (LGE) and a byte denoting the adjustable frequency drive address (ADR). A number of data bytes (variable, depending on the type of message) follows. The message is completed by a data control byte (BCC).



7.4.3 Message Length (LGE)

The message length is the number of data bytes plus the address byte ADR and the data control byte BCC.

The length of messages with 4 data bytes is	LGE = 4 + 1 + 1 = 6 bytes
The length of messages with 12 data bytes is	LGE = 12 + 1 + 1 = 14 bytes
The length of messages containing texts is	10[1)]+n bytes

1) The 10 represents the fixed characters, while the "n" is variable (depending on the length of the text).

7.4.4 Adjustable Frequency Drive Address (ADR)

Two different address formats are used.
The address range of the adjustable frequency drive is either 1-31 or 1-126.

1. Address format 1-31:
Bit 7 = 0 (address format 1-31 active)
Bit 6 is not used
Bit 5 = 1: Broadcast, address bits (0-4) are not used
Bit 5 = 0: No Broadcast
Bit 0-4 = Adjustable frequency drive address 1-31

2. Address format 1-126:
Bit 7 = 1 (address format 1-126 active)
Bit 0-6 = Adjustable frequency drive address 1-126
Bit 0-6 = 0 Broadcast

The slave returns the address byte unchanged to the master in the response telegram.

7.4.5 Data Control Byte (BCC)

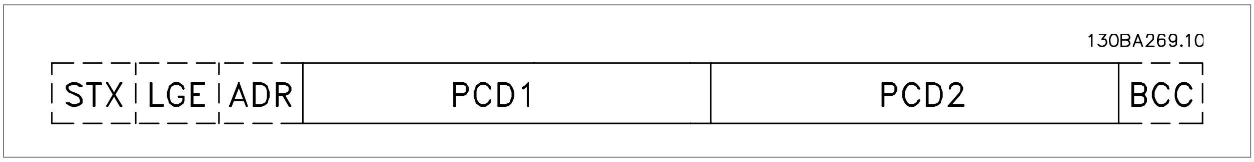
The checksum is calculated as an XOR-function. Before the first byte in the telegram is received, the calculated checksum is 0.

7.4.6 The Data Field

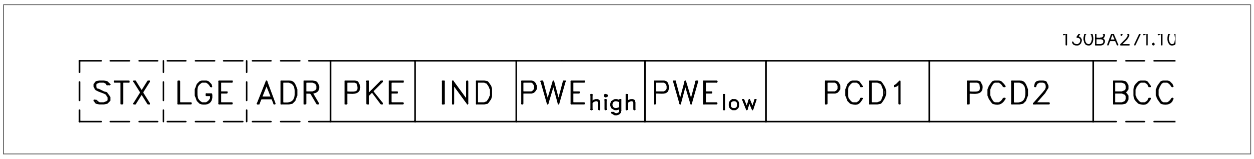
The structure of data blocks depends on the type of message. There are three message types, and the type applies for both control messages (master=>slave) and response messages (slave=>master).

The three types of message are:

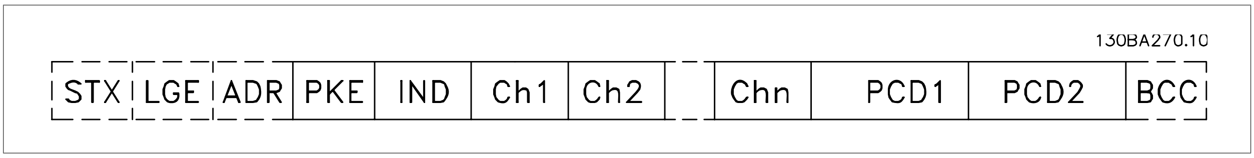
Process block (PCD):
The PCD is made up of a data block of four bytes (2 words) and contains:
- Control word and reference value (from master to slave)
- Status word and present output frequency (from slave to master).



Parameter block:
The parameter block is used to transfer parameters between master and slave. The data block is made up of 12 bytes (6 words) and also contains the process block.

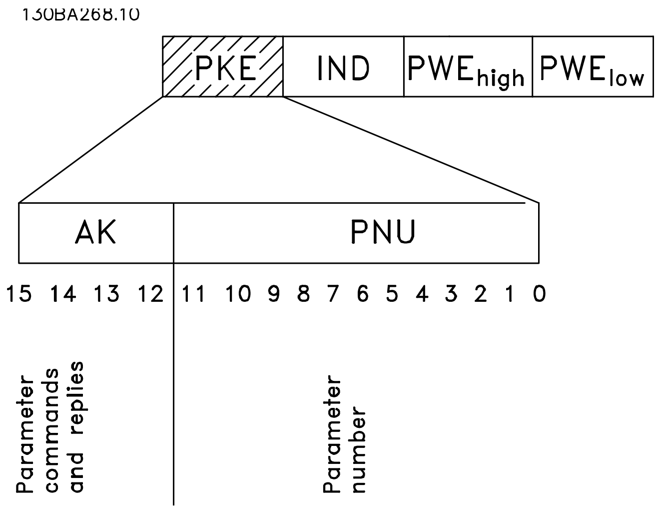


Text block:
The text block is used to read or write texts via the data block.



7.4.7 The PKE Field

The PKE field contains two sub-fields: Parameter command and response AK, and Parameter number PNU:



7

Bits no. 12-15 transfer parameter commands from master to slave and return processed slave responses to the master.

Parameter commands master ⇒ slave

Bit no.				**Parameter command**
15	14	13	12	
0	0	0	0	No command
0	0	0	1	Read parameter value
0	0	1	0	Write parameter value in RAM (word)
0	0	1	1	Write parameter value in RAM (double word)
1	1	0	1	Write parameter value in RAM and EEPROM (double word)
1	1	1	0	Write parameter value in RAM and EEPROM (word)
1	1	1	1	Read/write text

Response slave ⇒master

Bit no.				**Response**
15	14	13	12	
0	0	0	0	No response
0	0	0	1	Parameter value transferred (word)
0	0	1	0	Parameter value transferred (double word)
0	1	1	1	Command cannot be performed
1	1	1	1	text transferred

If the command cannot be performed, the slave sends this response:
0111 Command cannot be performed
- and issues the following fault report in the parameter value (PWE):

PWE low (Hex)	Fault Report
0	The parameter number used does not exit.
1	There is no write access to the defined parameter.
2	Data value exceeds the parameter's limits.
3	The sub index used does not exit.
4	The parameter is not the array type.
5	The data type does not match the defined parameter.
11	Data change in the defined parameter is not possible in the adjustable frequency drive's present mode. Certain parameters can only be changed when the motor is turned off.
82	There is no bus access to the defined parameter.
83	Data change is not possible because the factory set-up is selected.

7.4.8 Parameter Number (PNU)

Bits no. 0-11 transfer parameter numbers. The function of the relevant parameter is defined in the parameter description in the chapter *How to Program*.

7.4.9 Index (IND)

The index is used together with the parameter number to read/write-access parameters with an index, e.g., par. 15-30 *Alarm Log: Error Code*. The index consists of 2 bytes, a low byte and a high byte.

Only the low byte is used as an index.

7.4.10 Parameter Value (PWE)

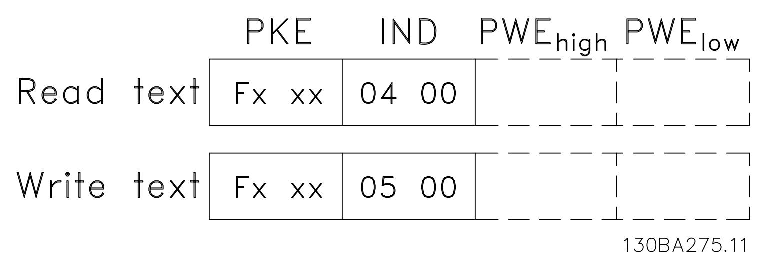
The parameter value block consists of 2 words (4 bytes), and the value depends on the defined command (AK). The master prompts for a parameter value when the PWE block contains no value. To change a parameter value (write), write the new value in the PWE block and send from the master to the slave.

When a slave responds to a parameter request (read command), the present parameter value in the PWE block is transferred and returned to the master. If a parameter contains not a numerical value but several data options, e.g., par. 0-01 *Language* where [0] corresponds to English, and [4] corresponds to Danish, select the data value by entering the value in the PWE block. See Example - Selecting a data value. Serial communication is only capable of reading parameters containing data type 9 (text string).

Par. 15-40 *FC Type* to par. 15-53 *Power Card Serial Number* contain data type 9.
For example, read the unit size and AC line voltage range in par. 15-40 *FC Type*. When a text string is transferred (read), the length of the message is variable, and the texts are of different lengths. The message length is defined in the second byte of the message, LGE. When using text transfer the index character indicates whether it is a read or a write command.

To read a text via the PWE block, set the parameter command (AK) to 'F' Hex. The index character high-byte must be "4".

Some parameters contain text that can be written to via the serial bus. To write a text via the PWE block, set the parameter command (AK) to 'F' Hex. The index characters high-byte must be "5".



7.4.11 Data Types Supported by the Adjustable Frequency Drive

Data types	Description
3	Integer 16
4	Integer 32
5	Unsigned 8
6	Unsigned 16
7	Unsigned 32
9	Text string
10	Byte string
13	Time difference
33	Reserved
35	Bit sequence

Unsigned means that there is no operational sign in the message.

7.4.12 Conversion

The various attributes of each parameter are displayed in the section Factory Settings. Parameter values are transferred as whole numbers only. Conversion factors are therefore used to transfer decimals.

Par. 4-12 *Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]* has a conversion factor of 0.1.
To preset the minimum frequency to 10 Hz, transfer the value 100. A conversion factor of 0.1 means that the value transferred is multiplied by 0.1. The value 100 is thus perceived as 10.0.

Conversion table

Conversion index	Conversion factor
74	0.1
2	100
1	10
0	1
-1	0.1
-2	0.01
-3	0.001
-4	0.0001
-5	0.00001

7.4.13 Process Words (PCD)

The block of process words is divided into two blocks of 16 bits, which always occur in the defined sequence.

PCD 1	PCD 2
Control message (master⇒slave control word)	Reference value
Control message (slave ⇒master) Status word	Present output frequency

7.5 Examples

7.5.1 Writing a Parameter Value

Change par. 4-14 *Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]* to 100 Hz.
Write the data in EEPROM.

PKE = E19E Hex - Write single word in par. 4-14 *Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]*
IND = 0000 Hex
PWEHIGH = 0000 Hex
PWELOW = 03E8 Hex - Data value 1000, corresponding to 100 Hz, see Conversion.

The message will look like this:

130BA092.10

E19E H	0000 H	0000 H	03E8 H
PKE	IND	PWE_{high}	PWE_{low}

Note: par. 4-14 *Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]* is a single word, and the parameter command for write in EEPROM is "E". Parameter number 4-14 is 19E in hexadecimal.

The response from the slave to the master will be:

130BA093.10

119E H	0000 H	0000 H	03E8 H
PKE	IND	PWE_{high}	PWE_{low}

7.5.2 Reading a Parameter Value

Read the value in par. 3-41 *Ramp 1 Ramp-up Time*

130BA094.10

1007 H	0000 H	0000 H	0000 H
PKE	IND	PWE_{high}	PWE_{low}

PKE = 1155 Hex - Read parameter value in par. 3-41 *Ramp 1 Ramp-up Time*
IND = 0000 Hex
PWEHIGH = 0000 Hex
PWELOW = 0000 Hex

If the value in par. 3-41 *Ramp 1 Ramp-up Time* is 10 s, the response from the slave to the master will be:

130BA267.10

1155 H	0000 H	0000 H	03E8 H
PKE	IND	PWE_{high}	PWE_{low}

3E8 Hex corresponds to 1000 decimal. The conversion index for par. 3-41 *Ramp 1 Ramp-up Time* is -2, i.e., 0.01.
par. 3-41 *Ramp 1 Ramp-up Time* is of the type *Unsigned 32*.

7.6 Modbus RTU Overview

7.6.1 Assumptions

This instruction manual assumes that the installed controller supports the interfaces in this document and that all the requirements stipulated in the controller, as well as the adjustable frequency drive, are strictly observed, along with all limitations therein.

7.6.2 What the User Should Already Know

The Modbus RTU (Remote Terminal Unit) is designed to communicate with any controller that supports the interfaces defined in this document. It is assumed that the user has full knowledge of the capabilities and limitations of the controller.

7.6.3 Modbus RTU Overview

Regardless of the type of physical communication networks, the Modbus RTU Overview describes the process a controller uses to request access to another device. This includes how it will respond to requests from another device, and how errors will be detected and reported. It also establishes a common format for the layout and contents of message fields.

While communicating over a Modbus RTU network, the protocol determines how each controller will learn its device address, recognize a message addressed to it, determine the kind of action to be taken and extract any data or other information contained in the message. If a reply is required, the controller will construct the reply message and send it.

Controllers communicate using a master-slave technique in which only one device (the master) can initiate transactions (called queries). The other devices (slaves) respond by supplying the requested data to the master or taking the action requested in the query.

The master can address individual slaves or initiate a broadcast message to all slaves. Slaves return a message (called a response) to queries that are addressed to them individually. No responses are returned to broadcast queries from the master. The Modbus RTU protocol establishes the format for the master’s query by placing into it the device (or broadcast) address, a function code defining the requested action, any data to be sent and an error-checking field. The slave’s response message is also constructed using Modbus protocol. It contains fields confirming the action taken, any data to be returned and an error-checking field. If an error occurs in receipt of the message, or if the slave is unable to perform the requested action, the slave will construct an error message and send it in response, or a timeout will occur.

7.6.4 Adjustable Frequency Drive with Modbus RTU

The adjustable frequency drive communicates in Modbus RTU format over the built-in RS-485 interface. Modbus RTU provides access to the control word and bus reference of the adjustable frequency drive.

The control word allows the modbus master to control several important functions of the adjustable frequency drive:

- Start
- Stop of the adjustable frequency drive in various ways:
  Coast stop
  Quick stop
  DC Brake stop
  Normal (ramp) stop
- Reset after a fault trip
- Run at a variety of preset speeds
- Run in reverse
- Change the active set-up
- Control the adjustable frequency drive’s built-in relay

The bus reference is commonly used for speed control. It is also possible to access the parameters, read their values, and where possible, write values to them. This permits a range of control options, including controlling the setpoint of the adjustable frequency drive when its internal PI controller is used.

7.7 Network Configuration

To enable Modbus RTU on the adjustable frequency drive, set the following parameters:

Parameter Number	Parameter name	Setting
8-30	Protocol	Modbus RTU
8-31	Address	1 - 247
8-32	Baud Rate	2400 - 115200
8-33	Parity/Stop bits	Even parity, 1 stop bit (default)

7.8 Modbus RTU Message Framing Structure

7.8.1 Adjustable Frequency Drive with Modbus RTU

The controllers are set up to communicate on the Modbus network using RTU (Remote Terminal Unit) mode, with each byte in a message containing two 4-bit hexadecimal characters. The format for each byte is shown below.

Start bit	Data byte								Stop/ parity	Stop

Coding System	8-bit binary, hexadecimal 0-9, A-F. Two hexadecimal characters contained in each 8-bit field of the message
Bits Per Byte	1 start bit 8 data bits, least significant bit sent first 1 bit for even/odd parity; no bit for no parity 1 stop bit if parity is used; 2 bits if no parity
Error Check Field	Cyclical Redundancy Check (CRC)

7.8.2 Modbus RTU Message Structure

The transmitting device places a Modbus RTU message into a frame with a known beginning and ending point. This allows receiving devices to begin at the start of the message, read the address portion, determine which device is addressed (or all devices, if the message is broadcast), and to recognize when the message is completed. Partial messages are detected, and errors are set as a result. Characters for transmission must be in hexadecimal 00 to FF format in each field. The adjustable frequency drive continuously monitors the network bus, also during 'silent' intervals. When the first field (the address field) is received, each adjustable frequency drive or device decodes it to determine which device is being addressed. Modbus RTU messages addressed to zero are broadcast messages. No response is permitted for broadcast messages. A typical message frame is shown below.

Typical Modbus RTU Message Structure

Start	Address	Function	Data	CRC check	End
T1-T2-T3-T4	8 bits	8 bits	N x 8 bits	16 bits	T1-T2-T3-T4

7.8.3 Start / Stop Field

Messages start with a silent period of at least 3.5 character intervals. This is implemented as a multiple of character intervals at the selected network baud rate (shown as Start T1-T2-T3-T4). The first field to be transmitted is the device address. Following the last transmitted character, a similar period of at least 3.5 character intervals marks the end of the message. A new message can begin after this period. The entire message frame must be transmitted as a continuous stream. If a silent period of more than 1.5 character intervals occurs before completion of the frame, the receiving device flushes the incomplete message and assumes that the next byte will be the address field of a new message. Similarly, if a new message begins prior to 3.5 character intervals after a previous message, the receiving device will consider it a continuation of the previous message. This will cause a time-out (no response from the slave), since the value in the final CRC field will not be valid for the combined messages.

7.8.4 Address Field

The address field of a message frame contains 8 bits. Valid slave device addresses are in the range of 0–247 decimal. The individual slave devices are assigned addresses in the range of 1–247. (0 is reserved for broadcast mode, which all slaves recognize.) A master addresses a slave by placing the slave address in the address field of the message. When the slave sends its response, it places its own address in this address field to let the master know which slave is responding.

7.8.5 Function Field

The function field of a message frame contains 8 bits. Valid codes are in the range of 1-FF. Function fields are used to send messages between master and slave. When a message is sent from a master to a slave device, the function code field tells the slave what kind of action to perform. When the slave responds to the master, it uses the function code field to indicate either a normal (error-free) response, or that some kind of error occurred (called an exception response). For a normal response, the slave simply echoes the original function code. For an exception response, the slave returns a code that is equivalent to the original function code with its most significant bit set to logic 1. In addition, the slave places a unique code into the data field of the response message. This tells the master what kind of error occurred, or the reason for the exception. Please also refer to the sections *Function Codes Supported by Modbus RTU* and *Exception Codes.*

7.8.6 Data Field

The data field is constructed using sets of two hexadecimal digits, in the range of 00 to FF hexadecimal. These are made up of one RTU character. The data field of messages sent from a master to slave device contains additional information that the slave must use to take the action defined by the function code. This can include items such as coil or register addresses, the quantity of items to be handled and the count of actual data bytes in the field.

7.8.7 CRC Check Field

Messages include an error-checking field, operating on the basis of a Cyclical Redundancy Check (CRC) method. The CRC field checks the contents of the entire message. It is applied regardless of any parity check method used for the individual characters of the message. The CRC value is calculated by the transmitting device, which appends the CRC as the last field in the message. The receiving device recalculates a CRC during receipt of the message and compares the calculated value to the actual value received in the CRC field. If the two values are unequal, a bus timeout results. The error-checking field contains a 16-bit binary value implemented as two 8-bit bytes. When this is done, the low-order byte of the field is appended first, followed by the high-order byte. The CRC high-order byte is the last byte sent in the message.

7.8.8 Coil Register Addressing

In Modbus, all data are organized in coils and holding registers. Coils hold a single bit, whereas holding registers hold a 2-byte word (i.e., 16 bits). All data addresses in Modbus messages are referenced to zero. The first occurrence of a data item is addressed as item number zero. For example: The coil known as 'coil 1' in a programmable controller is addressed as coil 0000 in the data address field of a Modbus message. Coil 127 decimal is addressed as coil 007EHEX (126 decimal).
Holding register 40001 is addressed as register 0000 in the data address field of the message. The function code field already specifies a 'holding register' operation. Therefore, the '4XXXX' reference is implicit. Holding register 40108 is addressed as register 006BHEX (107 decimal).

Coil Number	Description	Signal Direction
1-16	Adjustable frequency drive control word (see table below)	Master to slave
17-32	Adjustable frequency driver speed or setpoint reference Range 0x0–0xFFFF (-200% ... ~200%)	Master to slave
33-48	Adjustable frequency drive status word (see table below)	Slave to master
49-64	Open-loop mode: adjustable frequency drive output frequency Closed-loop mode: Adjustable frequency drive feedback signal	Slave to master
65	Parameter write control (master to slave) 0 = Parameter changes are written to the RAM of the adjustable frequency drive. 1 = Parameter changes are written to the RAM and EEPROM of the adjustable frequency drive.	Master to slave
66-65536	Reserved	

Coil	0	1
01	Preset reference LSB	
02	Preset reference MSB	
03	DC brake	No DC brake
04	Coast stop	No coast stop
05	Quick stop	No quick stop
06	Freeze freq.	No freeze freq.
07	Ramp stop	Start
08	No reset	Reset
09	No jog	Jog
10	Ramp 1	Ramp 2
11	Data not valid	Data valid
12	Relay 1 off	Relay 1 on
13	Relay 2 off	Relay 2 on
14	Set up LSB	
15	Set up MSB	
16	No reversing	Reversing
Adjustable frequency drive control word (FC profile)		

Coil	0	1
33	Control not ready	Control ready
34	Adjustable frequency drive not ready	Adjustable frequency drive ready
35	Coasting stop	Safety closed
36	No alarm	Alarm
37	Not used	Not used
38	Not used	Not used
39	Not used	Not used
40	No warning	Warning
41	Not at reference	At reference
42	Hand mode	Auto mode
43	Out of freq. range	In frequency range
44	Stopped	Running
45	Not used	Not used
46	No voltage warning	Voltage warning
47	Not in current limit	Current limit
48	No thermal warning	Thermal warning
Adjustable frequency drive status word (FC profile)		

Holding registers	
Register Number	**Description**
00001-00006	Reserved
00007	Last error code from an adjustable frequency drive data object interface
00008	Reserved
00009	Parameter index*
00010-00990	000 parameter group (parameters 001 through 099)
01000-01990	100 parameter group (parameters 100 through 199)
02000-02990	200 parameter group (parameters 200 through 299)
03000-03990	300 parameter group (parameters 300 through 399)
04000-04990	400 parameter group (parameters 400 through 499)
...	...
49000-49990	4900 parameter group (parameters 4900 through 4999)
50000	Input data: Adjustable frequency drive control word register (CTW).
50010	Input data: Bus reference register (REF).
...	...
50200	Output data: Adjustable frequency drive status word register (STW).
50210	Output data: Adjustable frequency drive main actual value register (MAV).

* Used to specify the index number to be used when accessing an indexed parameter.

7.8.9 How to Control the Adjustable Frequency Drive

This section describes codes that can be used in the function and data fields of a Modbus RTU message. For a complete description of all the message fields, please refer to the section *Modbus RTU Message Framing Structure.*

7.8.10 Function Codes Supported by Modbus RTU

Modbus RTU supports use of the following function codes in the function field of a message:

Function	Function Code
Read coils	1 hex
Read holding registers	3 hex
Write single coil	5 hex
Write single register	6 hex
Write multiple coils	F hex
Write multiple registers	10 hex
Get comm. event counter	B hex
Report slave ID	11 hex

Function	Function Code	Sub-function code	Sub-function
Diagnostics	8	1	Restart communication
		2	Return diagnostic register
		10	Clear counters and diagnostic register
		11	Return bus message count
		12	Return bus communication error count
		13	Return bus exception error count
		14	Return slave message count

7.8.11 Modbus Exception Codes

For a full explanation of the structure of an exception code response, please refer to the section *Modbus RTU Message Framing Structure, Function Field.*

Modbus Exception Codes

Code	Name	Meaning
1	Illegal function	The function code received in the query is not an allowable action for the server (or slave). This may be because the function code is only applicable to newer devices and was not implemented in the unit selected. It could also indicate that the server (or slave) is in the wrong state to process a request of this type, for example because it is not configured and is being asked to return register values.
2	Illegal data address	The data address received in the query is not an allowable address for the server (or slave). More specifically, the combination of reference number and transfer length is invalid. For a controller with 100 registers, a request with offset 96 and length 4 would succeed, a request with offset 96 and length 5 will generate exception 02.
3	Illegal data value	A value contained in the query data field is not an allowable value for server (or slave). This indicates a fault in the structure of the remainder of a complex request, such as that the implied length is incorrect. It specifically does NOT mean that a data item submitted for storage in a register has a value outside the expectation of the application program, since the Modbus protocol is unaware of the significance of any particular value of any particular register.
4	Slave device failure	An unrecoverable error occurred while the server (or slave) was attempting to perform the requested action.

7.9 How to Access Parameters

7.9.1 Parameter Handling

The PNU (Parameter Number) is translated from the register address contained in the Modbus read or write message. The parameter number is translated to Modbus as (10 x parameter number) DECIMAL.

7.9.2 Storage of Data

The Coil 65 decimal determines whether data written to the adjustable frequency drive is stored in EEPROM and RAM (coil 65 = 1), or only in RAM (coil 65 = 0).

7.9.3 IND

The array index is set in Holding Register 9 and used when accessing array parameters.

7.9.4 Text Blocks

Parameters stored as text strings are accessed in the same way as the other parameters. The maximum text block size is 20 characters. If a read request for a parameter is for more characters than the parameter stores, the response is truncated. If the read request for a parameter is fewer characters than the parameter stores, the response is space-filled.

7.9.5 Conversion Factor

The different attributes for each parameter can be seen in the section on factory settings. Since a parameter value can only be transferred as a whole number, a conversion factor must be used to transfer decimals. Please refer to the *Parameters section*.

7.9.6 Parameter Values

Standard Data Types
Standard data types are int16, int32, uint8, uint16 and uint32. They are stored as 4x registers (40001–4FFFF). The parameters are read using function 03HEX "Read Holding Registers." Parameters are written using the function 6HEX "Preset Single Register" for 1 register (16 bits), and the function 10HEX "Preset Multiple Registers" for 2 registers (32 bits). Readable sizes range from 1 register (16 bits) up to 10 registers (20 characters).

Non standard Data Types
Non standard data types are text strings stored as 4x registers (40001–4FFFF). The parameters are read using function 03HEX "Read Holding Registers" and written using function 10HEX "Preset Multiple Registers." Readable sizes range from 1 register (2 characters) up to 10 registers (20 characters).

7.10 Examples

The following examples illustrate various Modbus RTU commands. If an error occurs, please refer to the Exception Codes section.

7.10.1 Read Coil Status (01 HEX)

Description
This function reads the ON/OFF status of discrete outputs (coils) in the adjustable frequency drive. Broadcast is never supported for reads.

Query
The query message specifies the starting coil and quantity of coils to be read. Coil addresses start at zero, i.e., coil 33 is addressed as 32.

Example of a request to read coils 33-48 (Status Word) from slave device 01:

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01 (adjustable frequency drive address)
Function	01 (read coils)
Starting Address HI	00
Starting Address LO	20 (32 decimals) Coil 33
No. of Points HI	00
No. of Points LO	10 (16 decimals)
Error Check (CRC)	-

Response
The coil status in the response message is packed as one coil per bit of the data field. Status is indicated as: 1 = ON; 0 = OFF. The LSB of the first data byte contains the coil addressed in the query. The other coils follow toward the high order end of this byte, and from 'low order to high order' in subsequent bytes.
If the returned coil quantity is not a multiple of eight, the remaining bits in the final data byte will be padded with zeros (toward the high order end of the byte). The Byte Count field specifies the number of complete bytes of data.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01 (adjustable frequency drive address)
Function	01 (read coils)
Byte Count	02 (2 bytes of data)
Data (Coils 40-33)	07
Data (Coils 48-41)	06 (STW=0607hex)
Error Check (CRC)	-

NOTE!
Coils and registers are addressed explicit with an off-set of -1 in Modbus.
For example, Coil 33 is addressed as Coil 32.

7.10.2 Force/Write Single Coil (05 HEX)

Description

This function forces a writes a coil to either ON or OFF. When broadcast the function forces the same coil references in all attached slaves.

Query

The query message specifies the coil 65 (parameter write control) to be forced. Coil addresses start at zero, i.e., coil 65 is addressed as 64. Force Data = 00 00HEX (OFF) or FF 00HEX (ON).

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01 (adjustable frequency drive address)
Function	05 (write single coil)
Coil Address HI	00
Coil Address LO	40 (64 decimal) Coil 65
Force Data HI	FF
Force Data LO	00 (FF 00 = ON)
Error Check (CRC)	-

Response

The normal response is an echo of the query, which is returned after the coil state has been forced.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01
Function	05
Force Data HI	FF
Force Data LO	00
Quantity of Coils HI	00
Quantity of Coils LO	01
Error Check (CRC)	-

7.10.3 Force/Write Multiple Coils (0F HEX)

This function forces each coil in a sequence of coils to either ON or OFF. When broadcast, the function forces the same coil references in all attached slaves.

The query message specifies the coils 17 to 32 (speed setpoint) to be forced.

NOTE!
Coil addresses start at zero, i.e., coil 17 is addressed as 16.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01 (adjustable frequency drive address)
Function	0F (write multiple coils)
Coil Address HI	00
Coil Address LO	10 (coil address 17)
Quantity of Coils HI	00
Quantity of Coils LO	10 (16 coils)
Byte Count	02
Force Data HI (Coils 8-1)	20
Force Data LO (Coils 10-9)	00 (ref. = 2000hex)
Error Check (CRC)	-

Response
The normal response returns the slave address, function code, starting address and quantity of coils forced.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01 (adjustable frequency drive address)
Function	0F (write multiple coils)
Coil Address HI	00
Coil Address LO	10 (coil address 17)
Quantity of Coils HI	00
Quantity of Coils LO	10 (16 coils)
Error Check (CRC)	-

7.10.4 Read Holding Registers (03 HEX)

Description
This function reads the contents of holding registers in the slave.

Query
The query message specifies the starting register and quantity of registers to be read. Register addresses start at zero, i.e., registers 1-4 are addressed as 0-3.

Example: Read par. 3-03, *Maximum Reference*, register 03030.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01
Function	03 (read holding registers)
Starting Address HI	0B (Register address 3029)
Starting Address LO	05 (Register address 3029)
No. of Points HI	00
No. of Points LO	02 - (Par. 3-03 is 32 bits long, i.e., 2 registers)
Error Check (CRC)	-

7

Response
The register data in the response message are packed as two bytes per register, with the binary contents right-justified within each byte. For each register, the first byte contains the high order bits and the second contains the low order bits.

Example: Hex 0016E360 = 1.500.000 = 1500 RPM.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01
Function	03
Byte Count	04
Data HI (Register 3030)	00
Data LO (Register 3030)	16
Data HI (Register 3031)	E3
Data LO (Register 3031)	60
Error Check (CRC)	-

7.10.5 Preset Single Register (06 HEX)

Description

This function presets a value into a single holding register.

Query

The query message specifies the register reference to be preset. Register addresses start at zero, i.e., register 1 is addressed as 0.

Example: Write to par. 1-00, register 1000.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01
Function	06
Register Address HI	03 (Register address 999)
Register Address LO	E7 (Register address 999)
Preset Data HI	00
Preset Data LO	01
Error Check (CRC)	-

Response

Response: the normal response is an echo of the query, which is returned after the register contents have been passed.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01
Function	06
Register Address HI	03
Register Address LO	E7
Preset Data HI	00
Preset Data LO	01
Error Check (CRC)	-

7.10.6 Preset Multiple Registers (10 HEX)

Description

This function presets values into a sequence of holding registers.

Query

The query message specifies the register references to be preset. Register addresses start at zero, i.e., register 1 is addressed as 0. Example of a request to preset two registers (set parameter 1-05 = 738 (7.38 A)):

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01
Function	10
Starting Address HI	04
Starting Address LO	19
No. of Registers HI	00
No. of registers LO	02
Byte Count	04
Write Data HI (Register 4: 1049)	00
Write Data LO (Register 4: 1049)	00
Write Data HI (Register 4: 1050)	02
Write Data LO (Register 4: 1050)	E2
Error Check (CRC)	-

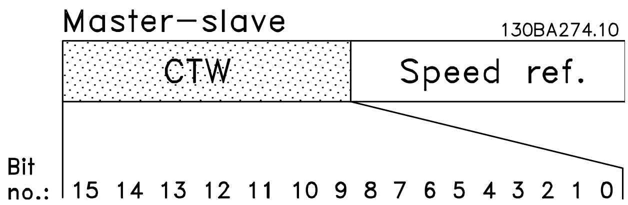
Response

The normal response returns the slave address, function code, starting address and quantity of preset registers.

Field Name	Example (HEX)
Slave Address	01
Function	10
Starting Address HI	04
Starting Address LO	19
No. of Registers HI	00
No. of registers LO	02
Error Check (CRC)	-

7.11 Danfoss FC Control Profile

7.11.1 Control Word According to FC Profile(par. 8-10 *Control Profile* = FC profile)



Bit	Bit value = 0	Bit value = 1
00	Reference value	external selection lsb
01	Reference value	external selection msb
02	DC brake	Ramp
03	Coasting	No coasting
04	Quick stop	Ramp
05	Hold output frequency	use ramp
06	Ramp stop	Start
07	No function	Reset
08	No function	Jog
09	Ramp 1	Ramp 2
10	Data invalid	Data valid
11	No function	Relay 01 active
12	No function	Relay 02 active
13	Parameter set-up	selection lsb
14	Parameter set-up	selection msb
15	No function	Reverse

Explanation of the Control Bits

Bits 00/01

Bits 00 and 01 are used to choose between the four reference values, which are pre-programmed in par. 3-10 *Preset Reference* according to the following table:

Programmed ref. value	Par.	Bit 01	Bit 00
1	Par. 3-10 *Preset Reference* [0]	0	0
2	Par. 3-10 *Preset Reference* [1]	0	1
3	Par. 3-10 *Preset Reference* [2]	1	0
4	Par. 3-10 *Preset Reference* [3]	1	1

NOTE!
Make a selection in par. 8-56 *Preset Reference Select* to define how Bit 00/01 gates with the corresponding function on the digital inputs.

Bit 02, DC brake:

Bit 02 = '0' leads to DC braking and stop. Set braking current and duration in par. 2-01 *DC Brake Current* and par. 2-02 *DC Braking Time*. Bit 02 = '1' leads to ramping.

Bit 03, Coasting:
Bit 03 = ’0’: The adjustable frequency drive immediately "lets go" of the motor, (the output transistors are "shut off") and it coasts to a standstill. Bit 03 = ’1’: The adjustable frequency drive starts the motor if the other starting conditions are met.

Make a selection in par. 8-50 *Coasting Select* to define how Bit 03 gates with the corresponding function on a digital input.

Bit 04, Quick stop:
Bit 04 = ’0’: Makes the motor speed ramp down to stop (set in par. 3-81 *Quick Stop Ramp Time*.

Bit 05, Hold output frequency
Bit 05 = ’0’: The present output frequency (in Hz) freezes. Change the frozen output frequency only by means of the digital inputs (par. 5-10 *Terminal 18 Digital Input* to par. 5-15 *Terminal 33 Digital Input*) programmed to *Speed up* and *Slow-down*.

NOTE!
If freeze output is active, the adjustable frequency drive can only be stopped by the following:

- Bit 03 Coasting stop
- Bit 02 DC braking
- Digital input (par. 5-10 *Terminal 18 Digital Input* to par. 5-15 *Terminal 33 Digital Input*) programmed to *DC braking*, *Coasting stop*, or *Reset* and *coasting stop*.

Bit 06, Ramp stop/start:
Bit 06 = ’0’: Causes a stop and makes the motor speed ramp down to stop via the selected ramp down parameter. Bit 06 = ’1’: Permits the adjustable frequency drive to start the motor, if the other starting conditions are met.

Make a selection in par. 8-53 *Start Select* to define how Bit 06 Ramp stop/start gates with the corresponding function on a digital input.

Bit 07, Reset: Bit 07 = ’0’: No reset. Bit 07 = ’1’: Resets a trip. Reset is activated on the leading edge of the signal, i.e., when changing from logic ’0’ to logic ’1’.

Bit 08, Jog:
Bit 08 = ’1’: The output frequency is determined by par. 3-19 *Jog Speed [RPM]*.

Bit 09, Selection of ramp 1/2:
Bit 09 = "0": Ramp 1 is active (par. 3-41 *Ramp 1 Ramp-up Time* to par. 3-42 *Ramp 1 Ramp-down Time*). Bit 09 = "1": Ramp 2 (par. 3-51 *Ramp 2 Ramp-up Time* to par. 3-52 *Ramp 2 Ramp-down Time*) is active.

Bit 10, Data not valid/Data valid:
Tell the adjustable frequency drive whether to use or ignore the control word. Bit 10 = ’0’: The control word is ignored. Bit 10 = ’1’: The control word is used. This function is relevant because the message always contains the control word, regardless of the message type. Thus, you can turn off the control word if you do not want to use it when updating or reading parameters.

Bit 11, Relay 01:
Bit 11 = "0": Relay not activated. Bit 11 = "1": Relay 01 activated provided that *Control word bit 11* is chosen in par. 5-40 *Function Relay*.

Bit 12, Relay 04:
Bit 12 = "0": Relay 04 is not activated. Bit 12 = "1": Relay 04 is activated provided that *Control word bit 12* is chosen in par. 5-40 *Function Relay*.

Bit 13/14, Selection of set-up:

Use bits 13 and 14 to choose from the four menu set-ups according to the shown table:

Set-up	Bit 14	Bit 13
1	0	0
2	0	1
3	1	0
4	1	1

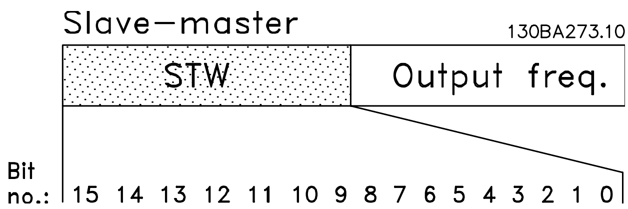
The function is only possible when *Multi Set-ups* is selected in par. 0-10 *Active Set-up*.

Make a selection in par. 8-55 *Set-up Select* to define how Bit 13/14 gates with the corresponding function on the digital inputs.

Bit 15 Reverse:

Bit 15 = ’0’: No reversing. Bit 15 = ’1’: Reversing. In the default setting, reversing is set to digital in par. 8-54 *Reverse Select*. Bit 15 causes reversing only when Ser. communication, Logic or or Logic and is selected.

7.11.2 Status Word According to FC Profile (STW) (par. 8-10 *Control Profile* = FC profile)



Bit	Bit = 0	Bit = 1
00	Control not ready	Control ready
01	Drive not ready	Drive ready
02	Coasting	Enable
03	No error	Trip
04	No error	Error (no trip)
05	Reserved	-
06	No error	Triplock
07	No warning	Warning
08	Speed ≠ reference	Speed = reference
09	Local operation	Bus control
10	Out of frequency limit	Frequency limit OK
11	No operation	In operation
12	Drive OK	Stopped, auto start
13	Voltage OK	Voltage exceeded
14	Torque OK	Torque exceeded
15	Timer OK	Timer exceeded

Explanation of the Status Bits

Bit 00, Control not ready/ready:

Bit 00 = ’0’: The adjustable frequency drive trips. Bit 00 = ’1’: The adjustable frequency drive controls are ready but the power component does not necessarily receive any power supply (in case of external 24 V supply to controls).

Bit 01, Drive ready:

Bit 01 = ’1’: The adjustable frequency drive is ready for operation but the coasting command is active via the digital inputs or via serial communication.

Bit 02, Coasting stop:

Bit 02 = ’0’: The adjustable frequency drive releases the motor. Bit 02 = ’1’: The adjustable frequency drive starts the motor with a start command.

Bit 03, No error/trip:
Bit 03 = ’0’: The adjustable frequency drive is not in fault mode. Bit 03 = ’1’: The adjustable frequency drive trips. To re-establish operation, enter [Reset].

Bit 04, No error/error (no trip):
Bit 04 = ’0’: The adjustable frequency drive is not in fault mode. Bit 04 = “1”: The adjustable frequency drive shows an error but does not trip.

Bit 05, Not used:
Bit 05 is not used in the status word.

Bit 06, No error / triplock:
Bit 06 = ’0’: The adjustable frequency drive is not in fault mode. Bit 06 = “1”: The adjustable frequency drive is tripped and locked.

Bit 07, No warning/warning:
Bit 07 = ’0’: There are no warnings. Bit 07 = ’1’: A warning has occurred.

Bit 08, Speed≠ reference/speed = reference:
Bit 08 = ’0’: The motor is running but the present speed is different from the preset speed reference. For example, it might be the case when the speed ramps up/down during start/stop. Bit 08 = ’1’: The motor speed matches the preset speed reference.

Bit 09, Local operation/bus control:
Bit 09 = ’0’: [STOP/RESET] is activate on the control unit or *Local control* in par. 3-13 *Reference Site* is selected. You cannot control the adjustable frequency drive via serial communication. Bit 09 = ’1’ It is possible to control the adjustable frequency drive via the serial communication bus / serial communication.

Bit 10, Out of frequency limit:
Bit 10 = ’0’: The output frequency has reached the value in par. 4-11 *Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]* or par. 4-13 *Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]*. Bit 10 = "1": The output frequency is within the defined limits.

Bit 11, No operation/in operation:
Bit 11 = ’0’: The motor is not running. Bit 11 = ’1’: The adjustable frequency drive has a start signal or the output frequency is greater than 0 Hz.

Bit 12, Drive OK/stopped, autostart:
Bit 12 = ’0’: There is no temporary overtemperature on the inverter. Bit 12 = ’1’: The inverter stops because of overtemperature but the unit does not trip and will resume operation once the over temperature stops.

Bit 13, Voltage OK/limit exceeded:
Bit 13 = ’0’: There are no voltage warnings. Bit 13 = ’1’: The DC voltage in the adjustable frequency drive’s intermediate circuit is too low or too high.

Bit 14, Torque OK/limit exceeded:
Bit 14 = ’0’: The motor current is lower than the torque limit selected in par. 4-18 *Current Limit*. Bit 14 = ’1’: The torque limit in par. 4-18 *Current Limit* is exceeded.

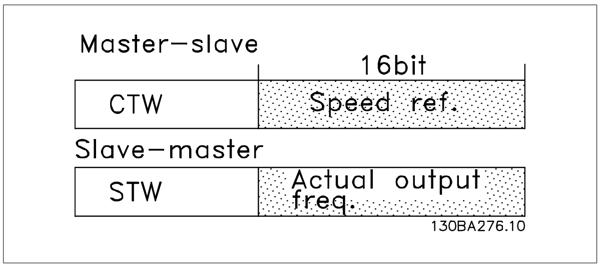
Bit 15, Timer OK/limit exceeded:
Bit 15 = ’0’: The timers for motor thermal protection and thermal protection are not exceeded 100%. Bit 15 = ’1’: One of the timers exceeds 100%.

All bits in the STW are set to ’0’ if the connection between the Interbus option and the adjustable frequency drive is lost, or if an internal communication problem has occurred.

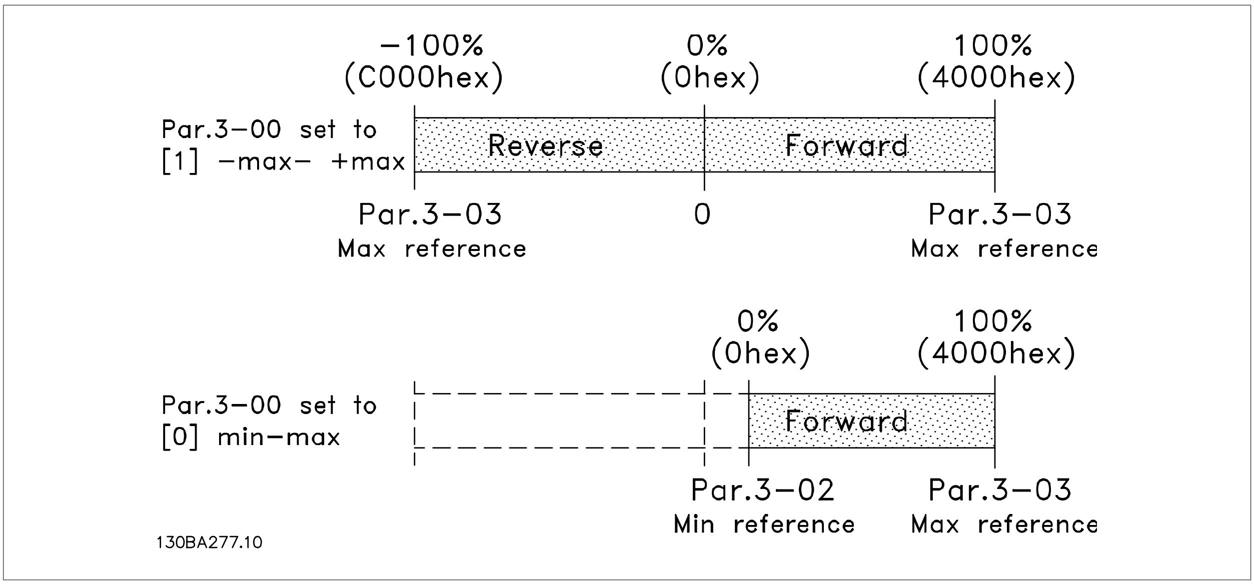
7

7.11.3 Bus Speed Reference Value

Speed reference value is transmitted to the adjustable frequency drive in a relative value expressed as %. The value is transmitted in the form of a 16-bit word; in integers (0-32767) the value 16384 (4000 Hex) corresponds to 100%. Negative figures are formatted by means of 2's complement. The Actual Output frequency (MAV) is scaled in the same way as the bus reference.



The reference and MAV are scaled as follows:



8 General Specifications and Troubleshooting

8.1 Line Power Supply Tables

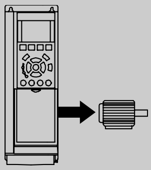
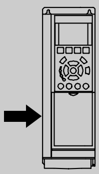
Line power supply 200–240 VAC - Normal overload 110% for 1 minute						
Adjustable frequency drive		P1K1	P1K5	P2K2	P3K0	P3K7
Typical Shaft Output [kW]		1.1	1.5	2.2	3	3.7
IP 20 / Chassis (A2+A3 may be converted to IP21 using a conversion kit. (Please see also items *Mechanical mounting* in the Instruction Manual and *IP 21/ Type 1 Enclosure kit* in the Design Guide.))		A2	A2	A2	A3	A3
IP 55 / NEMA 12		A5	A5	A5	A5	A5
IP 66 / NEMA 12		A5	A5	A5	A5	A5
Typical Shaft Output [HP] at 208 V		1.5	2.0	2.9	4.0	4.9
Output current						
	Continuous (3 x 200–240 V) [A]	6.6	7.5	10.6	12.5	16.7
	Intermittent (3 x 200–240 V) [A]	7.3	8.3	11.7	13.8	18.4
	Continuous kVA (208 V AC) [kVA]	2.38	2.70	3.82	4.50	6.00
	Max. cable size:					
	(line power, motor, brake) [mm^2 /AWG] 2)			4/10		
Max. input current						
	Continuous (3 x 200–240 V) [A]	5.9	6.8	9.5	11.3	15.0
	Intermittent (3 x 200–240 V) [A]	6.5	7.5	10.5	12.4	16.5
	Max. pre-fuses1) [A]	20	20	20	32	32
	Environment					
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] 4)	63	82	116	155	185
	Weight enclosure IP20 [kg]	4.9	4.9	4.9	6.6	6.6
	Weight enclosure IP21 [kg]	5.5	5.5	5.5	7.5	7.5
	Weight enclosure IP55 [kg]	13.5	13.5	13.5	13.5	13.5
	Weight enclosure IP 66 [kg]	13.5	13.5	13.5	13.5	13.5
	Efficiency 3)	0.96	0.96	0.96	0.96	0.96

Table 8.1: Line Power Supply 200–240 V AC

8

Line power supply 3 x 200–240 VAC - Normal overload 110% for 1 minute

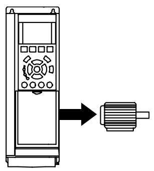
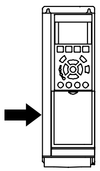
IP 20 / Chassis (B3+4 and C3+4 may be converted to IP21 using a conversion kit. (Please see also items *Mechanical mounting* in the Instruction Manual and *IP 21/Type 1 Enclosure kit* in the Design Guide.))		B3	B3	B3	B4	B4	C3	C3	C4	C4
IP 21 / NEMA 1		B1	B1	B1	B2	C1	C1	C1	C2	C2
IP 55 / NEMA 12		B1	B1	B1	B2	C1	C1	C1	C2	C2
IP 66 / NEMA 12		B1	B1	B1	B2	C1	C1	C1	C2	C2
Adjustable frequency drive Typical Shaft Output [kW]		P5K5 5.5	P7K5 7.5	P11K 11	P15K 15	P18K 18.5	P22K 22	P30K 30	P37K 37	P45K 45
	Typical Shaft Output [HP] at 208 V	7.5	10	15	20	25	30	40	50	60
Output current										
	Continuous (3 x 200–240 V) [A]	24.2	30.8	46.2	59.4	74.8	88.0	115	143	170
	Intermittent (3 x 200–240 V) [A]	26.6	33.9	50.8	65.3	82.3	96.8	127	157	187
	Continuous kVA (208 V AC) [kVA]	8.7	11.1	16.6	21.4	26.9	31.7	41.4	51.5	61.2
	Max. cable size:									
	(line power, motor, brake) [mm² /AWG] 2)		10/7		35/2		50/1/0 (B4=35/2)		95/4/0	120/250 MCM
With line power disconnect switch included:			16/6		35/2		35/2		70/3/0	185/ kcmil350
Max. input current										
	Continuous (3 x 200–240 V) [A]	22.0	28.0	42.0	54.0	68.0	80.0	104.0	130.0	154.0
	Intermittent (3 x 200–240 V) [A]	24.2	30.8	46.2	59.4	74.8	88.0	114.0	143.0	169.0
	Max. pre-fuses1) [A]	63	63	63	80	125	125	160	200	250
	Environment:									
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] 4)	269	310	447	602	737	845	1140	1353	1636
	Weight enclosure IP20 [kg]	12	12	12	23.5	23.5	35	35	50	50
	Weight enclosure IP21 [kg]	23	23	23	27	45	45	45	65	65
	Weight enclosure IP55 [kg]	23	23	23	27	45	45	45	65	65
	Weight enclosure IP 66 [kg]	23	23	23	27	45	45	45	65	65
	Efficiency 3)	0.96	0.96	0.96	0.96	0.96	0.97	0.97	0.97	0.97

Table 8.2: Line Power Supply 3 x 200–240 V AC

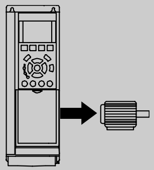
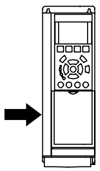
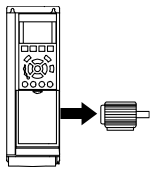
Line Power Supply 3 x 380–480 V AC - Normal overload 110% for 1 minute								
Adjustable frequency drive		P1K1	P1K5	P2K2	P3K0	P4K0	P5K5	P7K5
Typical Shaft Output [kW]		1.1	1.5	2.2	3	4	5.5	7.5
Typical Shaft Output [HP] at 460 V		1.5	2.0	2.9	4.0	5.0	7.5	10
IP 20 / Chassis (A2+A3 may be converted to IP21 using a conversion kit. (Please see also items *Mechanical mounting* in the instruction manual and *IP 21/Type 1 Enclosure kit* in the Design Guide.))		A2	A2	A2	A2	A2	A3	A3
IP 55 / NEMA 12		A5	A5	A5	A5	A5	A5	A5
IP 66 / NEMA 12		A5	A5	A5	A5	A5	A5	A5
Output current								
	Continuous (3 x 380–440 V) [A]	3	4.1	5.6	7.2	10	13	16
	Intermittent (3 x 380–440 V) [A]	3.3	4.5	6.2	7.9	11	14.3	17.6
	Continuous (3 x 441–480 V) [A]	2.7	3.4	4.8	6.3	8.2	11	14.5
	Intermittent (3 x 441–480 V) [A]	3.0	3.7	5.3	6.9	9.0	12.1	15.4
	Continuous kVA (400 V AC) [kVA]	2.1	2.8	3.9	5.0	6.9	9.0	11.0
	Continuous kVA (460 V AC) [kVA]	2.4	2.7	3.8	5.0	6.5	8.8	11.6
	Max. cable size: (line power, motor, brake) [[mm²/ AWG] 2)]	4/10						
Max. input current								
	Continuous (3 x 380–440 V) [A]	2.7	3.7	5.0	6.5	9.0	11.7	14.4
	Intermittent (3 x 380–440 V) [A]	3.0	4.1	5.5	7.2	9.9	12.9	15.8
	Continuous (3 x 441–480 V) [A]	2.7	3.1	4.3	5.7	7.4	9.9	13.0
	Intermittent (3 x 441–480 V) [A]	3.0	3.4	4.7	6.3	8.1	10.9	14.3
	Max. pre-fuses 1)[A]	10	10	20	20	20	32	32
	Environment							
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] 4)	58	62	88	116	124	187	255
	Weight enclosure IP20 [kg]	4.8	4.9	4.9	4.9	4.9	6.6	6.6
	Weight enclosure IP 21 [kg]							
	Weight enclosure IP 55 [kg]	13.5	13.5	13.5	13.5	13.5	14.2	14.2
	Weight enclosure IP 66 [kg]	13.5	13.5	13.5	13.5	13.5	14.2	14.2
	Efficiency 3)	0.96	0.97	0.97	0.97	0.97	0.97	0.97

Table 8.3: Line Power Supply 3 x 380–480 V AC

8

Line Power Supply 3 x 380–480 V AC - Normal overload 110% for 1 minute

adjustable frequency drive	P11K	P15K	P18K	P22K	P30K	P37K	P45K	P55K	P75K	P90K
Typical Shaft Output [kW]	11	15	18.5	22	30	37	45	55	75	90
Typical Shaft Output [HP] at 460 V	15	20	25	30	40	50	60	75	100	125
IP 20 / Chassis (B3+4 and C3+4 may be converted to IP21 using a conversion kit (Please contact Danfoss)	B3	B3	B3	B4	B4	B4	C3	C3	C4	C4
IP 21 / NEMA 1	B1	B1	B1	B2	B2	C1	C1	C1	C2	C2
IP 55 / NEMA 12	B1	B1	B1	B2	B2	C1	C1	C1	C2	C2
IP 66 / NEMA 12	B1	B1	B1	B2	B2	C1	C1	C1	C2	C2
Output current										
Continuous (3 x 380–439 V) [A]	24	32	37.5	44	61	73	90	106	147	177
Intermittent (3 x 380–439 V) [A]	26.4	35.2	41.3	48.4	67.1	80.3	99	117	162	195
Continuous (3 x 440–480 V) [A]	21	27	34	40	52	65	80	105	130	160
Intermittent (3 x 440–480 V) [A]	23.1	29.7	37.4	44	61.6	71.5	88	116	143	176
Continuous kVA (400 V AC) [kVA]	16.6	22.2	26	30.5	42.3	50.6	62.4	73.4	102	123
Continuous kVA 460 V AC) [kVA]	16.7	21.5	27.1	31.9	41.4	51.8	63.7	83.7	104	128
Max. cable size:										
(line power, motor, brake) [mm²/ AWG] 2)		10/7		35/2			50/1/0 (B4=35/2)		95/ 4/0	120/ MCM250
With line power disconnect switch included:			16/6			35/2	35/2		70/3/0	185/ kcmil350
Max. input current										
Continuous (3 x 380–439 V) [A]	22	29	34	40	55	66	82	96	133	161
Intermittent (3 x 380–439 V) [A]	24.2	31.9	37.4	44	60.5	72.6	90.2	106	146	177
Continuous (3 x 440–480 V) [A]	19	25	31	36	47	59	73	95	118	145
Intermittent (3 x 440–480 V) [A]	20.9	27.5	34.1	39.6	51.7	64.9	80.3	105	130	160
Max. pre-fuses1)[A]	63	63	63	63	80	100	125	160	250	250
Environment										
Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] 4)	278	392	465	525	698	739	843	1083	1384	1474
Weight enclosure IP20 [kg]	12	12	12	23.5	23.5	23.5	35	35	50	50
Weight enclosure IP 21 [kg]	23	23	23	27	27	45	45	45	65	65
Weight enclosure IP 55 [kg]	23	23	23	27	27	45	45	45	65	65
Weight enclosure IP 66 [kg]	23	23	23	27	27	45	45	45	65	65
Efficiency 3)	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.99



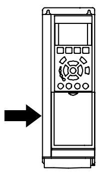


Table 8.4: Line Power Supply 3 x 380–480 V AC

Line power supply 3 x 525–600 V ACNormal overloadLight duty (LD) 110% for 1 minute

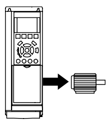
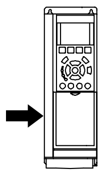
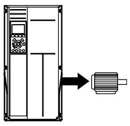
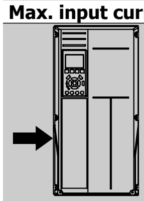
Size:	P1K1	P1K5	P2K2	P3K0	P3K7	P4K0	P5K5	P7K5	P11K	P15K	P18K	P22K	P30K	P37K	P45K	P55K	P75K	P90K
Typical Shaft Output [kW]	1.1	1.5	2.2	3	3.7	4	5.5	7.5	11	15	18.5	22	30	37	45	55	75	90
IP 20 / Chassis	A3	A3	A3	A3	A2	A3	A3	A3	B3	B3	B3	B4	B4	B4	C3	C3	C4	C4
IP 21 / NEMA 1	A3	A3	A3	A3	A2	A3	A3	A3	B1	B1	B1	B2	B2	C1	C1	C1	C2	C2
IP 55 / NEMA 12	A5	A5	A5	A5	A5	A5	A5	A5	B1	B1	B1	B2	B2	C1	C1	C1	C2	C2
IP 66 / NEMA 12	A5	A5	A5	A5	A5	A5	A5	A5	B1	B1	B1	B2	B2	C1	C1	C1	C2	C2
Output current																		
 Continuous (3 x 525–550 V) [A]	2.6	2.9	4.1	5.2	-	6.4	9.5	11.5	19	23	28	36	43	54	65	87	105	137
Intermittent (3 x 525–550 V) [A]	2.9	3.2	4.5	5.7	-	7.0	10.5	12.7	21	25	31	40	47	59	72	96	116	151
Continuous (3 x 525–600 V) [A]	2.4	2.7	3.9	4.9	-	6.1	9.0	11.0	18	22	27	34	41	52	62	83	100	131
Intermittent (3 x 525–600 V) [A]	2.6	3.0	4.3	5.4	-	6.7	9.9	12.1	20	24	30	37	45	57	68	91	110	144
Continuous kVA (525 V AC) [kVA]	2.5	2.8	3.9	5.0	-	6.1	9.0	11.0	18.1	21.9	26.7	34.3	41	51.4	61.9	82.9	100	130.5
Continuous kVA (575 V AC) [kVA]	2.4	2.7	3.9	4.9	-	6.1	9.0	11.0	17.9	21.9	26.9	33.9	40.8	51.8	61.7	82.7	99.6	130.5
Max. cable size, IP 21/55/66 (line power, motor, brake) [mm²]/[AWG] [2)]	4/ 10								10/ 7			25/ 4			50/ 1/0		95/ 4/0	120/ MCM250
Max. cable size, IP 20 (line power, motor, brake) [mm²]/[AWG] [2)]	4/ 10								16/ 6			35/ 2			50/ 1/0		95/ 4/0	150/ MCM250 [5)]
With line power disconnect switch included:	4/10								16/6					35/2			70/3/0	185/ kcmil350
Max. input current																		
 Continuous (3 x 525–600 V) [A]	2.4	2.7	4.1	5.2	-	5.8	8.6	10.4	17.2	20.9	25.4	32.7	39	49	59	78.9	95.3	124.3
Intermittent (3 x 525–600 V) [A]	2.7	3.0	4.5	5.7	-	6.4	9.5	11.5	19	23	28	36	43	54	65	87	105	137
Max. pre-fuses[1)] [A]	10	10	20	20	-	20	32	32	63	63	63	63	80	100	125	160	250	250
Environment:																		
Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)]	50	65	92	122	-	145	195	261	300	400	475	525	700	750	850	1100	1400	1500
Weight enclosure IP20 [kg]	6.5	6.5	6.5	6.5	-	6.5	6.6	6.6	12	12	12	23.5	23.5	23.5	35	35	50	50
Weight enclosure IP21/55 [kg]	13.5	13.5	13.5	13.5	13.5	13.5	14.2	14.2	23	23	23	27	27	27	45	45	65	65
Efficiency [4)]	0.97	0.97	0.97	0.97	-	0.97	0.97	0.97	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.98	0.98

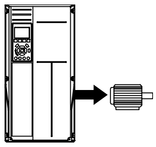
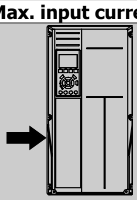
Table 8.5: [5)] With brake and load sharing 95/ 4/0

8

8.1.1 Line Power Supply High Power

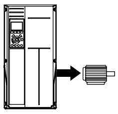
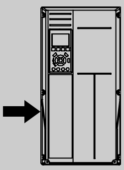
Line Power Supply 3 x 380–480 V AC		P110	P132	P160	P200	P250
	Typical Shaft output at 400 V [kW]	110	132	160	200	250
	Typical Shaft output at 460 V [HP]	150	200	250	300	350
	Enclosure IP21	D1	D1	D2	D2	D2
	Enclosure IP54	D1	D1	D2	D2	D2
	Enclosure IP00	D3	D3	D4	D4	D4
	Output current					
	Continuous (at 400 V) [A]	212	260	315	395	480
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 400 V) [A]	233	286	347	435	528
	Continuous (at 460/ 480 V) [A]	190	240	302	361	443
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 460/480 V) [A]	209	264	332	397	487
	Continuous KVA (at 400 V) [KVA]	147	180	218	274	333
	Continuous KVA (at 460 V) [KVA]	151	191	241	288	353
Max. input current						
	Continuous (at 400 V) [A]	204	251	304	381	463
	Continuous (at 460/ 480 V) [A]	183	231	291	348	427
	Max. cable size, line power motor, brake and load share [mm^2 (AWG[2]))]	2 x 70 (2 x 2/0)	2 x 70 (2 x 2/0)	2 x 150 (2 x 300 mcm)	2 x 150 (2 x 300 mcm)	2 x 150 (2 x 300 mcm)
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	300	350	400	500	630
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)], 400 V	3234	3782	4213	5119	5893
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)], 460 V	2947	3665	4063	4652	5634
	Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	96	104	125	136	151
	Weight, enclosure IP00 [kg]	82	91	112	123	138
	Efficiency[4)]	0.98				
	Output frequency	0–800 Hz				
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	185°F [85°C]	194°F [90°C]	221°F [105°C]	221°F [105°C]	239°F [115°C]
	Power card ambient trip	140°F [60°C]				

Line Power Supply 3 x 380–480 V AC

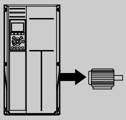
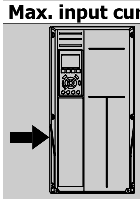
		P315	P355	P400	P450
	Typical Shaft output at 400 V [kW]	315	355	400	450
	Typical Shaft output at 460 V [HP]	450	500	600	600
	Enclosure IP21	E1	E1	E1	E1
	EnclosureIP54	E1	E1	E1	E1
	Enclosure IP00	E2	E2	E2	E2
	Output current				
	Continuous (at 400 V) [A]	600	658	745	800
	Intermittent (60 sec over-load) (at 400 V) [A]	660	724	820	880
	Continuous (at 460/ 480 V) [A]	540	590	678	730
	Intermittent (60 sec over-load) (at 460/480 V) [A]	594	649	746	803
	Continuous KVA (at 400 V) [KVA]	416	456	516	554
	Continuous KVA (at 460 V) [KVA]	430	470	540	582
Max. input current					
	Continuous (at 400 V) [A]	590	647	733	787
	Continuous (at 460/ 480 V) [A]	531	580	667	718
	Max. cable size, line power, motor and load share [mm² (AWG[2)])]	4x240 (4x500 mcm)	4x240 (4x500 mcm)	4x240 (4x500 mcm)	4x240 (4x500 mcm)
	Max. cable size, brake [mm² (AWG[2)])	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	700	900	900	900
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)], 400 V	6790	7701	8879	9670
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)], 460 V	6082	6953	8089	8803
	Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	263	270	272	313
	Weight, enclosure IP00 [kg]	221	234	236	277
	Efficiency[4)]	0.98			
	Output frequency	0–600 Hz			
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	203°F [95°C]			
	Power card ambient trip	154.4°F [68°C]			

8

Line Power Supply 3 x 380–480 V AC

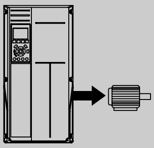
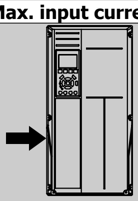
		P500	P560	P630	P710	P800	P1M0
	Typical Shaft output at 400 V [kW]	500	560	630	710	800	1000
	Typical Shaft output at 460 V [HP]	650	750	900	1000	1200	1350
	Enclosure IP21, 54 without/ with options cabinet	F1/F3	F1/F3	F1/F3	F1/F3	F2/F4	F2/F4
	Output current						
	Continuous (at 400 V) [A]	880	990	1120	1260	1460	1720
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 400 V) [A]	968	1089	1232	1386	1606	1892
	Continuous (at 460/ 480 V) [A]	780	890	1050	1160	1380	1530
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 460/480 V) [A]	858	979	1155	1276	1518	1683
	Continuous KVA (at 400 V) [KVA]	610	686	776	873	1012	1192
	Continuous KVA (at 460 V) [KVA]	621	709	837	924	1100	1219
Max. input current							
	Continuous (at 400 V) [A]	857	964	1090	1227	1422	1675
	Continuous (at 460/480 V) [A]	759	867	1022	1129	1344	1490
	Max. cable size,motor [mm^2 (AWG[2])]	8x150 (8x300 mcm)				12x150 (12x300 mcm)	
	Max. cable size, line power [mm^2 (AWG[2])]	8x240 (8x500 mcm)					
	Max. cable size, loadsharing [mm^2 (AWG[2])]	4x120 (4x250 mcm)					
	Max. cable size, brake [mm^2 (AWG[2])	4x185 (4x350 mcm)				6x185 (6x350 mcm)	
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	1600		2000		2500	
	Est. power loss at rated max. load [W][4], 400 V, F1 & F2	10647	12338	13201	15436	18084	20358
	Est. power loss at rated max. load [W] [4], 460 V, F1 & F2	9414	11006	12353	14041	17137	17752
	Max. added losses of A1 RFI, Circuit Breaker or Disconnect, & Contactor, F3 & F4	963	1054	1093	1230	2280	2541
	Max Panel Options Losses	400					
	Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	1004/ 1299	1004/ 1299	1004/ 1299	1004/ 1299	1246/ 1541	1246/ 1541
	Weight Rectifier Module [kg]	102	102	102	102	136	136
	Weight Inverter Module [kg]	102	102	102	136	102	102
	Efficiency[4]	0.98					
	Output frequency	0–600 Hz					
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	203°F [95°C]					
	Power card ambient trip	154.4°F [68°C]					

8

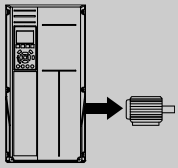
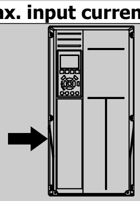
Line Power Supply 3 x 525–690 V AC						
		P45K	P55K	P75K	P90K	P110
	Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]	37	45	55	75	90
	Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP]	50	60	75	100	125
	Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]	45	55	75	90	110
	Enclosure IP21	D1	D1	D1	D1	D1
	Enclosure IP54	D1	D1	D1	D1	D1
	Enclosure IP00	D2	D2	D2	D2	D2
Output current						
	Continuous (at 3 x 525–550 V) [A]	56	76	90	113	137
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V) [A]	62	84	99	124	151
	Continuous (at 3 x 551–690 V) [A]	54	73	86	108	131
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/690 V) [A]	59	80	95	119	144
	Continuous KVA (at 550 V) [KVA]	53	72	86	108	131
	Continuous KVA (at 575 V) [KVA]	54	73	86	108	130
	Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA]	65	87	103	129	157
Max. input current						
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	60	77	89	110	130
	Continuous (at 575 V) [A]	58	74	85	106	124
	Continuous (at 690 V) [A]	58	77	87	109	128
	Max. cable size, line power, motor, load share and brake [mm² (AWG)]	2x70 (2x2/0)				
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	125	160	200	200	250
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)], 600 V	1398	1645	1827	2157	2533
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)], 690 V	1458	1717	1913	2262	2662
	Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	96				
	Weight, enclosure IP00 [kg]	82				
	Efficiency[4)]	0.97	0.97	0.98	0.98	0.98
	Output frequency	0–600 Hz				
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	185°F [85°C]				
	Power card ambient trip	140°F [60°C]				

8

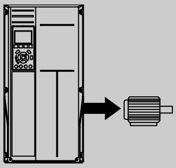
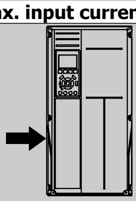
Line Power Supply 3 x 525–690 V AC

		P132	P160	P200	P250
	Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]	110	132	160	200
	Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP]	150	200	250	300
	Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]	132	160	200	250
	Enclosure IP21	D1	D1	D2	D2
	Enclosure IP54	D1	D1	D2	D2
	Enclosure IP00	D3	D3	D4	D4
	Output current				
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	162	201	253	303
	Intermittent (60 sec over-load) (at 550 V) [A]	178	221	278	333
	Continuous (at 575/690 V) [A]	155	192	242	290
	Intermittent (60 sec over-load) (at 575/690 V) [A]	171	211	266	319
	Continuous KVA (at 550 V) [KVA]	154	191	241	289
	Continuous KVA (at 575 V) [KVA]	154	191	241	289
	Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA]	185	229	289	347
Max. input current					
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	158	198	245	299
	Continuous (at 575 V) [A]	151	189	234	286
	Continuous (at 690 V) [A]	155	197	240	296
	Max. cable size, line power motor, load share and brake [mm^2 (AWG)]	2 x 70 (2 x 2/0)	2 x 70 (2 x 2/0)	2 x 150 (2 x 300 mcm)	2 x 150 (2 x 300 mcm)
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	315	350	350	400
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)], 600 V	2963	3430	4051	4867
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)], 690 V	3430	3612	4292	5156
	Weight, Enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	96	104	125	136
	Weight, Enclosure IP00 [kg]	82	91	112	123
	Efficiency[4)]	0.98			
	Output frequency	0–600 Hz			
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	185°F [85°C]	194°F [90°C]	230°F [110°C]	230°F [110°C]
	Power card ambient trip	140°F [60°C]			

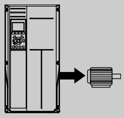
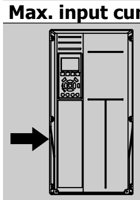
Line Power Supply 3 x 525–690 V AC

		P315	P400	P450
	Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]	250	315	355
	Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP]	350	400	450
	Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]	315	400	450
	Enclosure IP21	D2	D2	E1
	Enclosure IP54	D2	D2	E1
	Enclosure IP00	D4	D4	E2
	Output current			
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	360	418	470
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V) [A]	396	460	517
	Continuous (at 575/690 V) [A]	344	400	450
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/690 V) [A]	378	440	495
	Continuous KVA (at 550 V) [KVA]	343	398	448
	Continuous KVA (at 575 V) [KVA]	343	398	448
	Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA]	411	478	538
Max. input current				
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	355	408	453
	Continuous (at 575 V) [A]	339	390	434
	Continuous (at 690 V) [A]	352	400	434
	Max. cable size, line power, motor and load share [mm^2 (AWG)]	2 x 150 (2 x 300 mcm)	2 x 150 (2 x 300 mcm)	4 x 240 (4 x 500 mcm)
	Max. cable size, brake [mm^2 (AWG)]	2 x 150 (2 x 300 mcm)	2 x 150 (2 x 300 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	500	550	700
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)], 600 V	5493	5852	6132
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)], 690 V	5821	6149	6440
	Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	151	165	263
	Weight, enclosure IP00 [kg]	138	151	221
	Efficiency[4)]	0.98		
	Output frequency	0–600 Hz	0–500 Hz	0–500 Hz
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	230°F [110°C]	230°F [110°C]	185°F [85°C]
	Power card ambient trip	140°F [60°C]	140°F [60°C]	154.4°F [68°C]

Line Power Supply 3 x 525–690 V AC

		P500	P560	P630
	Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]	400	450	500
	Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP]	500	600	650
	Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]	500	560	630
	Enclosure IP21	E1	E1	E1
	Enclosure IP54	E1	E1	E1
	Enclosure IP00	E2	E2	E2
	Output current			
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	523	596	630
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V) [A]	575	656	693
	Continuous (at 575/690 V) [A]	500	570	630
	Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/690 V) [A]	550	627	693
	Continuous KVA (at 550 V) [KVA]	498	568	600
	Continuous KVA (at 575 V) [KVA]	498	568	627
	Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA]	598	681	753
Max. input current				
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	504	574	607
	Continuous (at 575 V) [A]	482	549	607
	Continuous (at 690 V) [A]	482	549	607
	Max. cable size, line power, motor and load share [mm^2 (AWG)]	4x240 (4x500 mcm)	4x240 (4x500 mcm)	4x240 (4x500 mcm)
	Max. cable size, brake [mm^2 (AWG)]	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)	2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm)
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	700	900	900
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)], 600 V	6903	8343	9244
	Estimated power loss at rated max. load [W] [4)], 690 V	7249	8727	9673
	Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	263	272	313
	Weight, enclosure IP00 [kg]	221	236	277
	Efficiency[4)]	0.98		
	Output frequency	0–500 Hz		
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	185°F [85°C]		
	Power card ambient trip	154.4°F [68°C]		

Line Power Supply 3 x 525–690 V AC

		P710	P800	P900	P1M0	P1M2	P1M4
	Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]	560	670	750	850	1000	1100
	Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP]	750	950	1050	1150	1350	1550
	Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]	710	800	900	1000	1200	1400
	Enclosure IP21, 54 without/ with options cabinet	F1/ F3	F1/ F3	F1/ F3	F2/ F4	F2/ F4	F2/F4
	Output current						
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	763	889	988	1108	1317	1479
	Intermittent (60 s overload, at 550 V) [A]	839	978	1087	1219	1449	1627
	Continuous (at 575/690 V) [A]	730	850	945	1060	1260	1415
	Intermittent (60 s overload, at 575/690 V) [A]	803	935	1040	1166	1386	1557
	Continuous KVA (at 550 V) [KVA]	727	847	941	1056	1255	1409
	Continuous KVA (at 575 V) [KVA]	727	847	941	1056	1255	1409
	Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA]	872	1016	1129	1267	1506	1691
Max. input current							
	Continuous (at 550 V) [A]	743	866	962	1079	1282	1440
	Continuous (at 575 V) [A]	711	828	920	1032	1227	1378
	Continuous (at 690 V) [A]	711	828	920	1032	1227	1378
	Max. cable size,motor [mm² (AWG[2])]	8x150 (8x300 mcm)			12x150 (12x300 mcm)		
	Max. cable size, line power [mm² (AWG[2])]	8x240 (8x500 mcm)			8x456 8x900 mcm		
	Max. cable size, loadsharing [mm² (AWG[2])]	4x120 (4x250 mcm)					
	Max. cable size, brake [mm² (AWG[2]))	4x185 (4x350 mcm)			6x185 (6x350 mcm)		
	Max. external pre-fuses [A] [1]	1600				2000	2500
	Est. power loss at rated max. load [W] [4], 600 V, F1 & F2	10771	12272	13835	15592	18281	20825
	Est. power loss at rated max. load [W] [4], 690 V, F1 & F2	11315	12903	14533	16375	19207	21857
	Max. added losses of Circuit Breaker or Disconnect & Contactor, F3 & F4	427	532	615	665	863	1044
	Max Panel Options Losses	400					
	Weight,enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]	1004/ 1299	1004/ 1299	1004/ 1299	1246/ 1541	1246/ 1541	1280/1575
	Weight, Rectifier Module [kg]	102	102	102	136	136	136
	Weight, Inverter Module [kg]	102	102	136	102	102	136
	Efficiency[4]	0.98					
	Output frequency	0–500 Hz					
	Heatsink overtemp. trip	185°F [85°C]					
	Power card amb. trip	154.4°F [68°C]					

1) For type of fuse, see the section Fuses.

2) American Wire Gauge.

3) Measured using 16.4 ft [5 m] shielded motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.

4) The typical power loss is at nominal load conditions and expected to be within +/-15% (tolerance relates to variety in voltage and cable conditions). Values are based on a typical motor efficiency (eff2/eff3 border line). Motors with lower efficiency will also add to the power loss in the adjustable frequency drive and opposite. If the switching frequency is increased comed to the default setting, the power losses may rise significantly.LCP and typical control card power consumptions are included. Further options and customer load may add up to 30 W to the losses. (Though typical, only 4 W extra for a fully loaded control card, or options for slot A or slot B, each.)
Although measurements are made with state of the art equipment, some measurement inaccuracy must be allowed for (+/-5%).

8.2 General Specifications

Line power supply (L1, L2, L3):

Supply voltage	200–240 V ±10% 380–480 V ±10% 525–600 V ±10% 525–690 V ±10%

AC line voltage low / line drop-out:
During low AC line voltage or a line drop-out, the adjustable frequency drive continues until the intermediate circuit voltage drops below the minimum stop level, which corresponds typically to 15% below the adjustable frequency drive's lowest rated supply voltage. Power-up and full torque cannot be expected at AC line voltage lower than 10% below the adjustable frequency drive's lowest rated supply voltage.

Supply frequency	50/60 Hz ±5%
Max. imbalance temporary between line phases	3.0% of rated supply voltage
True Power Factor ()	≥ 0.9 nominal at rated load
Displacement Power Factor (cos) near unity	(> 0.98)
Switching on input supply L1, L2, L3 (power-ups) ≤ enclosure type A	maximum twice/min.
Switching on input supply L1, L2, L3 (power-ups) ≥ enclosure type B, C	maximum once/min.
Switching on input supply L1, L2, L3 (power-ups) ≥ enclosure type D, E, F	maximum once/2 min.
Environment according to EN60664-1	overvoltage category III / pollution degree 2

The unit is suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100,000 RMS symmetrical Amperes, 480/600 V maximum.

Motor output (U, V, W):

Output voltage	0–100% of supply voltage
Output frequency	0–1000 Hz*
Switching on output	Unlimited
Ramp times	1–3600 sec.

** Dependent on power size.*

Torque characteristics:

Starting torque (Constant torque)	maximum 110% for 1 min.*
Starting torque	maximum 135% up to 0.5 sec.*
Overload torque (Constant torque)	maximum 110% for 1 min.*

**Percentage relates to the adjustable frequency drive's nominal torque.*

Cable lengths and cross-sections:

Max. motor cable length, shielded/armored	VLT HVAC Drive: 150 m
Max. motor cable length, unshielded/unarmored	VLT HVAC Drive: 300 m
Max. cross-section to motor, line power, load sharing and brake *	
Maximum cross-section to control terminals, rigid wire	0.0023 in^2 [1.5 mm^2]/16 AWG (2 x 0.00112^2 in [0.75 mm^2])
Maximum cross-section to control terminals, flexible cable	0.0016 in^2 [1 mm^2]/18 AWG
Maximum cross-section to control terminals, cable with enclosed core	0.0008 in^2 [0.5 mm^2]/20 AWG
Minimum cross-section to control terminals	0.039 in^2 [0.25 mm^2]

** See Line Power Supply tables for more information!*

Digital inputs:

Programmable digital inputs	4 (6)
Terminal number	18, 19, 27 [1)], 29 [1)], 32, 33,
Logic	PNP or NPN
Voltage level	0–24 V DC
Voltage level, logic'0' PNP	< 5 V DC
Voltage level, logic'1' PNP	> 10 V DC
Voltage level, logic '0' NPN	> 19 V DC
Voltage level, logic '1' NPN	< 14 V DC
Maximum voltage on input	28 V DC

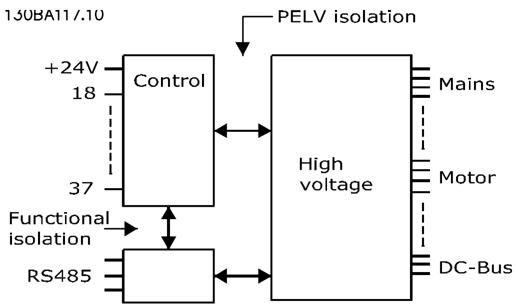
Input resistance, R_i	approx. 4 kΩ

All digital inputs are galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

1) Terminals 27 and 29 can also be programmed as output.

Analog inputs:	
Number of analog inputs	2
Terminal number	53, 54
Modes	Voltage or current
Mode select	Switch S201 and switch S202
Voltage mode	Switch S201/switch S202 = OFF (U)
Voltage level	: 0–+10 V (scaleable)
Input resistance, R_i	approx. 10 kΩ
Max. voltage	± 20 V
Current mode	Switch S201/switch S202 = ON (I)
Current level	0/4 to 20 mA (scaleable)
Input resistance, R_i	approx. 200 Ω
Max. current	30 mA
Resolution for analog inputs	10 bit (+ sign)
Accuracy of analog inputs	Max. error 0.5% of full scale
Bandwidth	: 200 Hz

The analog inputs are galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.



Pulse inputs:	
Programmable pulse inputs	2
Terminal number pulse	29, 33
Max. frequency at terminal, 29, 33	110 kHz (push-pull driven)
Max. frequency at terminal, 29, 33	5 kHz (open collector)
Min. frequency at terminal 29, 33	4 Hz
Voltage level	see section on Digital input
Maximum voltage on input	28 V DC
Input resistance, R_i	approx. 4 kΩ
Pulse input accuracy (0.1–1 kHz)	Max. error: 0.1% of full scale

Analog output:	
Number of programmable analog outputs	1
Terminal number	42
Current range at analog output	0/4–20 mA
Max. resistor load to common at analog output	500 Ω
Accuracy on analog output	Max. error: 0.8% of full scale
Resolution on analog output	8 bit

The analog output is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

Control card, RS-485 serial communication:

Terminal number	68 (P,TX+, RX+), 69 (N,TX-, RX-)
Terminal number 61	Common for terminals 68 and 69

The RS-485 serial communication circuit is functionally seated from other central circuits and galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV).

8

Digital output:

Programmable digital/pulse outputs	2
Terminal number	27, 29 1)
Voltage level at digital/frequency output	0–24 V
Max. output current (sink or source)	40 mA
Max. load at frequency output	1 kΩ
Max. capacitive load at frequency output	10 nF
Minimum output frequency at frequency output	0 Hz
Maximum output frequency at frequency output	32 kHz
Accuracy of frequency output	Max. error: 0.1% of full scale
Resolution of frequency outputs	12 bit

1) Terminal 27 and 29 can also be programmed as input.

The digital output is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

Control card, 24 V DC output:

Terminal number	12, 13
Max. load	: 200 mA

The 24 V DC supply is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV), but has the same potential as the analog and digital inputs and outputs.

Relay outputs:

Programmable relay outputs	2
Relay 01 Terminal number	1-3 (break), 1-2 (make)
Max. terminal load (AC-1)1) on 1-3 (NC), 1-2 (NO) (Resistive load)	240 V AC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (AC-15)1) (Inductive load @ cosφ 0.4)	240 V AC, 0.2 A
Max. terminal load (DC-1)1) on 1-2 (NO), 1-3 (NC) (Resistive load)	60 V DC, 1A
Max. terminal load (DC-13)1) (Inductive load)	24 V DC, 0.1A
Relay 02 Terminal number	4-6 (break), 4-5 (make)
Max. terminal load (AC-1)1) on 4-5 (NO) (Resistive load)2)3)	400 V AC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (AC-15)1) on 4-5 (NO) (Inductive load @ cosφ 0.4)	240 V AC, 0.2 A
Max. terminal load (DC-1)1) on 4-5 (NO) (Resistive load)	80 V DC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (DC-13)1) on 4-5 (NO) (Inductive load)	24 V DC, 0.1 A
Max. terminal load (AC-1)1) on 4-6 (NC) (Resistive load)	240 V AC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (AC-15)1) on 4-6 (NC) (Inductive load @ cosφ 0.4)	240 V AC, 0.2 A
Max. terminal load (DC-1)1) on 4-6 (NC) (Resistive load)	50 V DC, 2 A
Max. terminal load (DC-13)1) on 4-6 (NC) (Inductive load)	24 V DC, 0.1 A
Min. terminal load on 1-3 (NC), 1-2 (NO), 4-6 (NC), 4-5 (NO)	24 V DC 10 mA, 24 V AC 20 mA
Environment according to EN 60664-1	overvoltage category III/pollution degree 2

1) IEC 60947 t 4 and 5
The relay contacts are galvanically isolated from the rest of the circuit by reinforced isolation (PELV).
2) Overvoltage Category II
3) UL applications 300 V AC 2 A

Control card, 10 V DC output:

Terminal number	50
Output voltage	10.5 V ±0.5 V
Max. load	25 mA

The 10 V DC supply is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

Control characteristics:

Resolution of output frequency at 0 - 1000 Hz	: +/- 0.003 Hz
System response time (terminals 18, 19, 27, 29, 32, 33)	: ≤ 2 ms
Speed control range (open-loop)	1:100 of synchronous speed
Speed accuracy (open-loop)	30–4000 rpm: Maximum error of ±8 rpm

All control characteristics are based on a 4-pole asynchronous motor

Surroundings:	
Enclosure type A	IP 20/Chassis, IP 21kit/Type 1, IP55/Type12, IP 66/Type12
Enclosure type B1/B2	IP 21/Type 1, IP55/Type12, IP 66/12
Enclosure type B3/B4	IP20/Chassis
Enclosure type C1/C2	IP 21/Type 1, IP55/Type 12, IP66/12
Enclosure type C3/C4	IP20/Chassis
Enclosure type D1/D2/E1	IP21/Type 1, IP54/Type12
Enclosure type D3/D4/E2	IP00/Chassis
Enclosure type F1/F3	IP21, 54/Type1, 12
Enclosure type F2/F4	IP21, 54/Type1, 12
Enclosure kit available ≤ enclosure type D	IP21/NEMA 1/IP 4_X on top of enclosure
Vibration test enclosure A, B, C	1.0 g
Vibration test enclosure D, E, F	0.7 g
Relative humidity	5%–95% (IEC 721-3-3; Class 3K3 (non-condensing) during operation
Aggressive environment (IEC 60068-2-43) H_2S test	class Kd
Test method according to IEC 60068-2-43 H2S (10 days)	
Ambient temperature (at 60 AVM switching mode)	
- with derating	max. 55° C[1]
- with full output power of typical EFF2 motors (up to 90% output current)	max. 122°F [50 ° C][1]
- at full continuous Adjustable Frequency Drive output current	max. 113°F [45 ° C][1]

[1] *For more information on derating, see the Design Guide, section on Special Conditions.*

Minimum ambient temperature during full-scale operation	32°F [0°C]
Minimum ambient temperature at reduced performance	14°F [-10°C]
Temperature during storage/transport	-13°–+149°/158°F [-25°–+65/70°C]
Maximum altitude above sea level without derating	3280 ft [1000 m]
Maximum altitude above sea level with derating	9842 ft [3000 m]

Derating for high altitude, see section on special conditions.

EMC standards, Emission	EN 61800-3, EN 61000-6-3/4, EN 55011, IEC 61800-3
EMC standards, Immunity	EN 61800-3, EN 61000-6-1/2, EN 61000-4-2, EN 61000-4-3, EN 61000-4-4, EN 61000-4-5, EN 61000-4-6

See section on special conditions!

Control card performance:	
Scan interval	: 5 ms

Control card, USB serial communication:	
USB standard	1.1 (Full speed)
USB plug	USB type B "device" plug

Connection to PC is carried out via a standard host/device USB cable.
The USB connection is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.
The USB connection is not galvanically isolated from protection ground. Use only an isolated laptop/PC as the connection to the USB connector on the adjustable frequency drive or an isolated USB cable/drive.

Protection and Features:

- Electronic thermal motor protection against overload.
- Temperature monitoring of the heatsink ensures that the adjustable frequency drive trips if the temperature reaches 203°F ± 41°F [95°C ± 5°C]. An overload temperature cannot be reset until the temperature of the heatsink is below 158°F ± 41°F [70°C ± 5°C] (Guideline - these temperatures may vary for different power sizes, enclosures, etc.). The adjustable frequency drive has an auto derating function to avoid its heatsink reaching 203°F [95°C].
- The adjustable frequency drive is protected against short-circuits on motor terminals U, V, W.
- If a line phase is missing, the adjustable frequency drive trips or issues a warning (depending on the load).
- Monitoring of the intermediate circuit voltage ensures that the adjustable frequency drive trips if the intermediate circuit voltage is too low or too high.
- The adjustable frequency drive is protected against ground faults on motor terminals U, V, W.

8.3 Efficiency

8.3.1 Efficiency

Efficiency of the adjustable frequency drive (η_{VLT})

The load on the adjustable frequency drive has little effect on its efficiency. In general, the efficiency is the same at the rated motor frequency $f_{M,N}$, even if the motor supplies 100% of the rated shaft torque or only 75%, i.e., in case of part loads.

This also means that the efficiency of the adjustable frequency drive does not change even if other U/f characteristics are chosen.
However, the U/f characteristics influence the efficiency of the motor.

The efficiency declines a little when the switching frequency is set to a value greater than 5 kHz. The efficiency will also be slightly reduced if the AC line voltage is 480 V, or if the motor cable is longer than 98.43 ft [30 m].

Adjustable frequency drive efficiency calculation

Calculate the efficiency of the adjustable frequency drive at different loads based on the graph below. The factor in this graph must be multiplied with the specific efficiency factor listed in the specification tables:

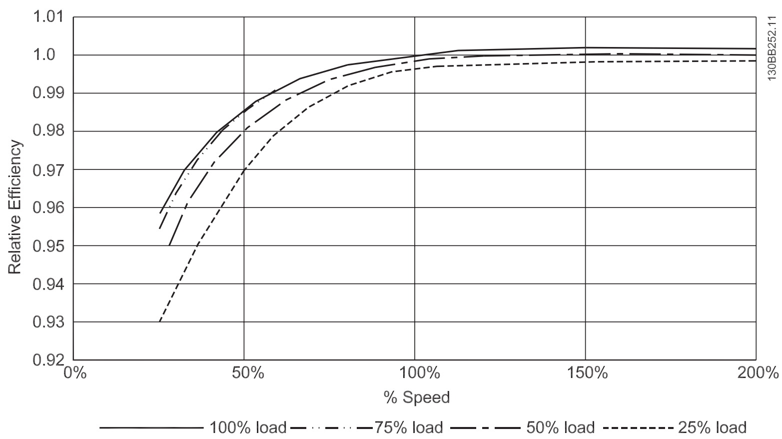


Figure 8.1: Typical efficiency curves

Example: Assume a 75 hp [55 kW], 380–480 V AC adjustable frequency drive at 25% load at 50% speed. The graph is showing 0.97 - rated efficiency for a 75 hp [55 kW] adjustable frequency drive is 0.98. The actual efficiency is then: 0.97x0.98=0.95.

Efficiency of the motor (η_{MOTOR})

The efficiency of a motor connected to the adjustable frequency drive depends on magnetizing level. In general, the efficiency is just as good as with line operation. The efficiency of the motor depends on the type of motor.

In the range of 75–100% of the rated torque, the efficiency of the motor is practically constant, both when it is controlled by the adjustable frequency drive, and when it runs directly on line power.

In small motors, the influence from the U/f characteristic on efficiency is marginal. However, in motors from 15 hp [11 kW] and up, the advantages are significant.

In general, the switching frequency does not affect the efficiency of small motors. The efficiency of motors from 15 hp [11 kW] and up improves by 1–2%. This is because the sine shape of the motor current is almost perfect at high switching frequency.

Efficiency of the system (η_{SYSTEM})

To calculate the system efficiency, the efficiency of the adjustable frequency drive (η_{VLT}) is multiplied by the efficiency of the motor (η_{MOTOR}):

η_{SYSTEM}) = η_{VLT} x η_{MOTOR}

8.4 Acoustic noise

The acoustic noise from the adjustable frequency drive comes from three sources:

1. DC intermediate circuit coils.
2. Integrated fan.
3. RFI filter choke.

Typical values are measured at a distance of 3.28 ft. [1 m] from the unit:

Enclosure	At reduced fan speed (50%) [dBA] ***	Full fan speed [dBA]
A2	51	60
A3	51	60
A5	54	63
B1	61	67
B2	58	70
B3	59.4	70.5
B4	53	62.8
C1	52	62
C2	55	65
C3	56.4	67.3
C4	-	-
D1/D3	74	76
D2/D4	73	74
E1/E2*	73	74
**	82	83
F1/F2/F3/F4	78	80

* 450 hp [315 kW], 380–480 V AC and 600–675 hp [450–500 kW], 525–690 V AC only!
** Remaining E1/E2 power sizes.
*** For D, E and F sizes, reduced fan speed is at 87%, measured at 200 V.

8

8.5 Peak voltage on motor

When a transistor in the inverter bridge switches, the voltage across the motor increases by a du/dt ratio depending on:

- the motor cable (type, cross-section, length, shielded or unshielded)
- inductance

The natural induction causes an overshoot U_{PEAK} in the motor voltage before it stabilizes itself at a level depending on the voltage in the intermediate circuit. The rise time and the peak voltage U_{PEAK} affect the service life of the motor. If the peak voltage is too high, motors without phase coil insulation are especially affected. If the motor cable is short (by a few yards), the rise time and peak voltage are lower.
If the motor cable is long (328 ft [100 m]), the rise time and peak voltage increase.

In motors without phase insulation paper or other insulation reinforcement suitable for operation with the voltage supply (such as an adjustable frequency drive), fit a sine-wave filter on the output of the adjustable frequency drive.

To obtain approximate values for cable lengths and voltages not mentioned below, use the following rules of thumb:

1. Rise time increases/decreases proportionally with cable length.
2. U_{PEAK} = DC-link voltage x 1.9
   (DC-link voltage = AC line voltage x 1.35).
3. $$dU \Big/ dt = \frac{0.8 \times U_{PEAK}}{Risetime}$$

Data are measured according to IEC 60034-17.
Cable lengths are in meters.

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P5K5, T2

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [μsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/μsec]
36	240	0.226	0.616	2.142
50	240	0.262	0.626	1.908
100	240	0.650	0.614	0.757
150	240	0.745	0.612	0.655

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P7K5, T2

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [μsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/μsec]
5	230	0.13	0.510	3.090
50	230	0.23	0.590	2.034
100	230	0.54	0.580	0.865
150	230	0.66	0.560	0.674

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P11K, T2

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [μsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/μsec]
36	240	0.264	0.624	1.894
136	240	0.536	0.596	0.896
150	240	0.568	0.568	0.806

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P15K, T2

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [μsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/μsec]
30	240	0.556	0.650	0.935
100	240	0.592	0.594	0.807
150	240	0.708	0.575	0.669

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P18K, T2

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [μsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/μsec]
36	240	0.244	0.608	1.993
136	240	0.568	0.580	0.832
150	240	0.720	0.574	0.661

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P22K, T2

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [μsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/μsec]
36	240	0.244	0.608	1.993
136	240	0.560	0.580	0.832
150	240	0.720	0.574	0.661

8

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P30K, T2

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [μsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/μsec]
15	240	0.194	0.626	2.581
50	240	0.252	0.574	1.929
150	240	0.444	0.538	0.977

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P37K, T2

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [μsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/μsec]
30	240	0.300	0.598	1.593
100	240	0.536	0.566	0.843
150	240	0.776	0.546	0.559

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P45K, T2

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [μsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/μsec]
30	240	0.300	0.598	1.593
100	240	0.536	0.566	0.843
150	240	0.776	0.546	0.559

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P1K5, T4

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [μsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/μsec]
5	400	0.640	0.690	0.862
50	400	0.470	0.985	0.985
150	400	0.760	1.045	0.947

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P4K0, T4

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
5	400	0.172	0.890	4.156
50	400	0.310		2.564
150	400	0.370	1.190	1.770

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P7K5, T4

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
5	400	0.04755	0.739	8.035
50	400	0.207	1.040	4.548
150	400	0.6742	1.030	2.828

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P11K, T4

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
15	400	0.408	0.718	1.402
100	400	0.364	1.050	2.376
150	400	0.400	0.980	2.000

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P15K, T4

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
36	400	0.422	1.060	2.014
100	400	0.464	0.900	1.616
150	400	0.896	1.000	0.915

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P18K, T4

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
36	400	0.344	1.040	2.442
100	400	1.000	1.190	0.950
150	400	1.400	1.040	0.596

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P22K, T4

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
36	400	0.232	0.950	3.534
100	400	0.410	0.980	1.927
150	400	0.430	0.970	1.860

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P30K, T4

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
15	400	0.271	1.000	3.100
100	400	0.440	1.000	1.818
150	400	0.520	0.990	1.510

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P37K, T4				
Cable length [m]	AC line voltage	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
5	480	0.270	1.276	3.781
50	480	0.435	1.184	2.177
100	480	0.840	1.188	1.131
150	480	0.940	1.212	1.031

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P45K, T4				
Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
36	400	0.254	1.056	3.326
50	400	0.465	1.048	1.803
100	400	0.815	1.032	1.013
150	400	0.890	1.016	0.913

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P55K, T4				
Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
10	400	0.350	0.932	2.130

8

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P75K, T4				
Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
5	480	0.371	1.170	2.466

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P90K, T4				
Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
5	400	0.364	1.030	2.264

High Power Range:

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P110 - P250, T4				
Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
30	400	0.34	1.040	2.447

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P315 - P1M0, T4				
Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [µsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/µsec]
30	500	0.71	1.165	1.389
30	400	0.61	0.942	1.233
30	500 [1]	0.80	0.906	0.904
30	400 [1]	0.82	0.760	0.743

Table 8.6: 1: With Danfoss dU/dt filter.

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P110 - P400, T7

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [μsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/μsec]
30	690	0.38	1.513	3.304
30	575	0.23	1.313	2.750
30	690 [1)]	1.72	1.329	0.640
1) With Danfoss dU/dt filter.				

Adjustable Frequency Drive, P450 - P1M4, T7

Cable length [m]	AC line voltage [V]	Rise time [μsec]	Vpeak [kV]	dU/dt [kV/μsec]
30	690	0.57	1.611	2.261
30	575	0.25		2.510
30	690 [1)]	1.13	1.629	1.150
1) With Danfoss dU/dt filter.				

8.6 Special Conditions

8.6.1 Purpose of Derating

Derating must be taken into account when using the adjustable frequency drive at low air pressure (heights), at low speeds, with long motor cables, cables with a large cross-section or at high ambient temperature. The required action is described in this section.

8

8.6.2 Derating for ambient temperature

90% adjustable frequency drive output current can be maintained up to max. 122°F [50°C] ambient temperature.

With a typical full load current of EFF 2 motors, full output shaft power can be maintained up to 122°F [50°C].
For more specific data and/or derating information for other motors or conditions, please contact Danfoss.

8.6.3 Automatic adaptations to ensure performance

The adjustable frequency drive constantly checks for critical levels of internal temperature, load current, high voltage on the intermediate circuit and low motor speeds. As a response to a critical level, the adjustable frequency drive can adjust the switching frequency and / or change the switching pattern in order to ensure the performance of the adjustable frequency drive. The capability to automatically reduce the output current extends the acceptable operating conditions even further.

8.6.4 Derating for low air pressure

The cooling capability of air is decreased at a lower air pressure.

At an altitude lower than 3,280 ft [1,000 m], no derating is necessary, but above 3,280 ft [1,000 m], the ambient temperature (T_{AMB}) or max. output current (I_{out}) should be derated in accordance with the diagram shown.

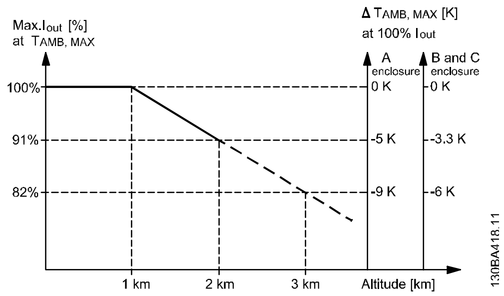
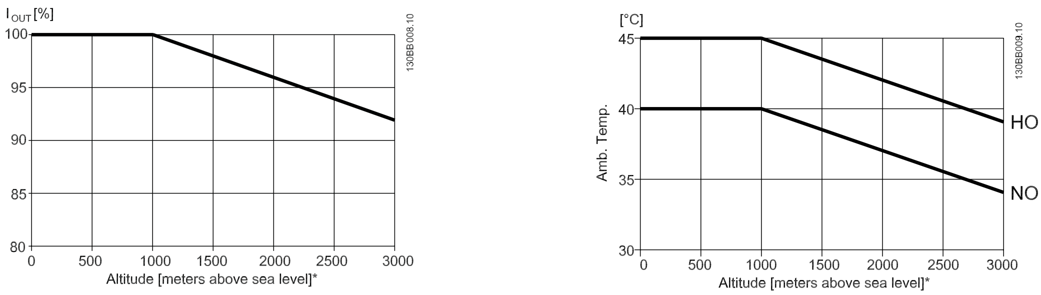


Figure 8.2: Derating of output current versus altitude at $T_{AMB, MAX}$ for frame sizes A, B and C. At altitudes above 6,600 feet [2 km], please contact Danfoss regarding PELV.

8

An alternative is to lower the ambient temperature at high altitudes and thereby ensure 100% output current at high altitudes. As an example of how to read the graph, the situation at 6,600 ft [2 km] is elaborated. At a temperature of 113°F [45°C] ($T_{AMB, MAX}$ - 3.3 K), 91% of the rated output current is available. At a temperature of 107°F [41.7°C], 100% of the rated output current is available.



Derating of output current versus altitude at $T_{AMB, MAX}$ for frame sizes D, E and F.

8.6.5 Derating for running at low speed

When a motor is connected to an adjustable frequency drive, it is necessary to make sure that the cooling of the motor is adequate.
The level of heating depends on the load on the motor as well as the operating speed and time.

Constant torque applications (CT mode)

A problem may occur at low RPM values in constant torque applications. In a constant torque application, a motor may overheat at low speeds due to less cooling air from the motor integral fan.
Therefore, if the motor is to be run continuously at an RPM value lower than half of the rated value, the motor must be supplied with additional air-cooling (or a motor designed for this type of operation may be used).

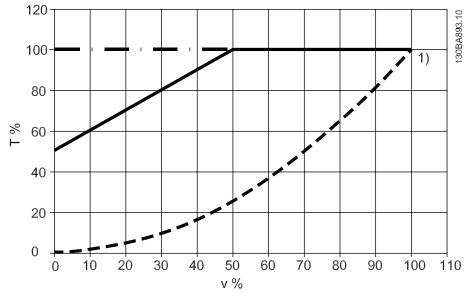
An alternative is to reduce the load level of the motor by choosing a larger motor. However, the design of the adjustable frequency drive limits the motor size.

Variable (quadratic) torque applications (VT)

In VT applications such as centrifugal pumps and fans, where the torque is proportional to the square of the speed and the power is proportional to the cube of the speed, there is no need for additional cooling or de-rating of the motor.

In the graphs shown below, the typical VT curve is below the maximum torque with de-rating and maximum torque with forced cooling at all speeds.

Maximum load for a standard motor at 40°C driven by an adjustable frequency drive type VLT FCxxx



Legend: – – – –Typical torque at VT load –•–•–•–Max torque with forced cooling ———Max torque
Note 1) Oversyncronous speed operation will result in the available motor torque decreasing inversely proportional to the increase in speed. This must be considered during the design phase to avoid overloading the motor.

8

8.7 Troubleshooting

8.7.1 Alarms and Warnings

A warning or an alarm is signaled by the relevant LED on the front of the adjustable frequency drive and indicated by a code on the display.

A warning remains active until its cause is no longer present. Under certain circumstances operation of the motor may still be continued. Warning messages may be critical, but are not necessarily so.

In the event of an alarm, the adjustable frequency drive will have tripped. Alarms must be reset to restart operation once their cause has been rectified.

This may be done in four ways:

1. By using the [RESET] control button on the LCP.
2. Via a digital input with the "Reset" function.
3. Via serial communication/optional serial communication bus.
4. By resetting automatically using the [Auto Reset] function, which is a default setting for VLT HVAC Drive Drive, see par. 14-20 *Reset Mode* in the **FC 100 Programming Guide**

NOTE!
After a manual reset using the [RESET] button on the LCP, the [AUTO ON] or [HAND ON] button must be pressed to restart the motor.

8

If an alarm cannot be reset, the reason may be that its cause has not been rectified, or the alarm is trip-locked (see also table on following page).

Alarms that are trip-locked offer additional protection, means that the line power supply must be switched off before the alarm can be reset. After being switched back on, the adjustable frequency drive is no longer blocked and may be reset as described above, once the cause has been rectified.
Alarms that are not trip-locked can also be reset using the automatic reset function in par. 14-20 *Reset Mode* (Warning: automatic wake-up is possible!)
If a warning and alarm is marked against a code in the table on the following page, this means that either a warning occurs before an alarm, or it can be specified whether it is a warning or an alarm that is to be displayed for a given fault.
This is possible, for instance, in par. 1-90 *Motor Thermal Protection*. After an alarm or trip, the motor carries on coasting, and the alarm and warning flash on the adjustable frequency drive. Once the problem has been rectified, only the alarm continues flashing.

No.	Description	Warning	Alarm/Trip	Alarm/Trip Lock	Parameter Reference
1	10 Volts low	X			
2	Live zero error	(X)	(X)		6-01
3	No motor	(X)			1-80
4	Line phase loss	(X)	(X)	(X)	14-12
5	DC link voltage high	X			
6	DC link voltage low	X			
7	DC overvoltage	X	X		
8	DC undervoltage	X	X		
9	Inverter overloaded	X	X		
10	Motor ETR overtemperature	(X)	(X)		1-90
11	Motor thermistor over temperature	(X)	(X)		1-90
12	Torque limit	X	X		
13	Overcurrent	X	X	X	
14	Ground fault	X	X	X	
15	Hardware mismatch		X	X	
16	Short Circuit		X	X	
17	Control word timeout	(X)	(X)		8-04
23	Internal Fan Fault	X			
24	External Fan Fault	X			14-53
25	Brake resistor short-circuited	X			
26	Brake resistor power limit	(X)	(X)		2-13
27	Brake chopper short-circuited	X	X		
28	Brake check	(X)	(X)		2-15
29	Drive overtemperature	X	X	X	
30	Motor phase U missing	(X)	(X)	(X)	4-58
31	Motor phase V missing	(X)	(X)	(X)	4-58
32	Motor phase W missing	(X)	(X)	(X)	4-58
33	Soft-charge fault		X	X	
34	Serial Communication Bus communication fault	X	X		
35	Out of frequency ranges	X	X		
36	Line failure	X	X		
37	Phase Imbalance	X	X		
38	Internal fault		X	X	
39	Heatsink sensor		X	X	
40	Overload of Digital Output Terminal 27	(X)			5-00, 5-01
41	Overload of Digital Output Terminal 29	(X)			5-00, 5-02
42	Overload of Digital Output On X30/6	(X)			5-32
42	Overload of Digital Output On X30/7	(X)			5-33
46	Pwr. card supply		X	X	
47	24 V supply low	X	X	X	
48	1.8 V supply low		X	X	
49	Speed limit	X	(X)		1-86
50	AMA calibration failed		X		
51	AMA check U_{nom} and I_{nom}		X		
52	AMA low I_{nom}		X		
53	AMA motor too big		X		
54	AMA motor too small		X		
55	AMA Parameter out of range		X		
56	AMA interrupted by user		X		
57	AMA timeout		X		
58	AMA internal fault	X	X		
59	Current limit	X			

Table 8.7: Alarm/Warning code list

8

No.	Description	Warning	Alarm/Trip	Alarm/Trip Lock	Parameter Reference
60	External Interlock	X			
62	Output Frequency at Maximum Limit	X			
64	Voltage Limit	X			
65	Control Board Overtemperature	X	X	X	
66	Heatsink Temperature Low	X			
67	Option Configuration has Changed		X		
68	Safe Stop Activated		X1)		
69	Pwr. Card Temp		X	X	
70	Illegal FC configuration			X	
71	PTC 1 Safe Stop	X	X1)		
72	Dangerous Failure			X1)	
73	Safe Stop Auto Restart				
76	Power Unit Set-up	X			
79	Illegal PS config		X	X	
80	Drive Initialized to Default Value		X		
91	Analog input 54 wrong settings			X	
92	NoFlow	X	X		22-2*
93	Dry Pump	X	X		22-2*
94	End of Curve	X	X		22-5*
95	Broken Belt	X	X		22-6*
96	Start Delayed	X			22-7*
97	Stop Delayed	X			22-7*
98	Clock Fault	X			0-7*
201	Fire M was Active				
202	Fire M Limits Exceeded				
203	Missing Motor				
204	Locked Rotor				
243	Brake IGBT	X	X		
244	Heatsink temp	X	X	X	
245	Heatsink sensor		X	X	
246	Pwr.card supply		X	X	
247	Pwr.card temp		X	X	
248	Illegal PS config		X	X	
250	New spare parts			X	
251	New Type Code		X	X	

Table 8.8: Alarm/Warning code list

(X) Dependent on parameter

1) Cannot be auto reset via par. 14-20 *Reset Mode*

A trip is the action when an alarm has appeared. The trip will coast the motor and can be reset by pressing the reset button or make a reset by a digital input (parameter group 5-1* [1]). The original event that caused an alarm cannot damage the adjustable frequency drive or cause dangerous conditions. A trip lock is an action that occurs in conjunction with an alarm, which may cause damage to the adjustable frequency drive or connected parts. A trip lock situation can only be reset by power cycling.

LED indication	
Warning	yellow
Alarm	flashing red
Trip locked	yellow and red

Table 8.9: LED Indication

Alarm Word and Extended Status Word

Bit	Hex	Dec	Alarm Word	Warning Word	Extended Status Word
0	00000001	1	Brake Check	Brake Check	Ramping
1	00000002	2	Pwr. Card Temp	Pwr. Card Temp	AMA Running
2	00000004	4	Ground Fault	Ground Fault	Start CW/CCW
3	00000008	8	Ctrl.Card Temp	Ctrl.Card Temp	Slow-down
4	00000010	16	Ctrl. Word TO	Ctrl. Word TO	Catch Up
5	00000020	32	Overcurrent	Overcurrent	Feedback High
6	00000040	64	Torque Limit	Torque Limit	Feedback Low
7	00000080	128	Motor Th Over	Motor Th Over	Output Current High
8	00000100	256	Motor ETR Over	Motor ETR Over	Output Current Low
9	00000200	512	Inverter Overld.	Inverter Overld.	Output Freq High
10	00000400	1024	DC undervolt	DC undervolt	Output Freq Low
11	00000800	2048	DC overvolt	DC overvolt	Brake Check OK
12	00001000	4096	Short Circuit	DC Voltage Low	Braking Max
13	00002000	8192	Soft-charge Fault	DC Voltage High	Braking
14	00004000	16384	Line ph. Loss	Line ph. Loss	Out of Speed Range
15	00008000	32768	AMA Not OK	No Motor	OVC Active
16	00010000	65536	Live Zero Error	Live Zero Error	
17	00020000	131072	Internal Fault	10V low	
18	00040000	262144	Brake Overload	Brake Overload	
19	00080000	524288	U phase Loss	Brake Resistor	
20	00100000	1048576	V phase Loss	Brake IGBT	
21	00200000	2097152	W phase Loss	Speed Limit	
22	00400000	4194304	Serial Communication Bus Fault	Serial Communication Bus Fault	
23	00800000	8388608	24 V Supply Low	24V Supply Low	
24	01000000	16777216	Line Failure	Line Failure	
25	02000000	33554432	1.8 V Supply Low	Current Limit	
26	04000000	67108864	Brake Resistor	Low Temp	
27	08000000	134217728	Brake IGBT	Voltage Limit	
28	10000000	268435456	Option Change	Unused	
29	20000000	536870912	Drive Initialized	Unused	
30	40000000	1073741824	Safe Stop	Unused	

Table 8.10: Description of Alarm Word, Warning Word and Extended Status Word

The alarm words, warning words and extended status words can be read out via serial bus or optional serial communication bus for diagnosis. See also par. 16-90 *Alarm Word*, par. 16-92 *Warning Word* and par. 16-94 *Ext. Status Word*.

8

8.7.2 Alarm Words

Alarm word, par. 16-90 *Alarm Word*

Bit (Hex)	Alarm Word (par. 16-90 *Alarm Word*)
00000001	Brake check
00000002	Power card overtemperature
00000004	Ground fault
00000008	Ctrl. card overtemperature
00000010	Control word timeout
00000020	Overcurrent
00000040	Torque limit
00000080	Motor thermistor overtemp.
00000100	Motor ETR overtemperature
00000200	Inverter overloaded
00000400	DC link undervoltage
00000800	DC link overvoltage
00001000	Short circuit
00002000	Soft-charge fault
00004000	Line phase loss
00008000	AMA not OK
00010000	Live zero error
00020000	Internal fault
00040000	Brake overload
00080000	Motor phase U is missing
00100000	Motor phase V is missing
00200000	Motor phase W is missing
00400000	Serial communication bus fault
00800000	24 V supply fault
01000000	Line failure
02000000	1.8 V supply fault
04000000	Brake resistor short circuit
08000000	Brake chopper fault
10000000	Option change
20000000	Drive initialized
40000000	Safe Stop
80000000	Not used

Alarm word 2, par. 16-91 *Alarm word 2*

Bit (Hex)	Alarm Word 2 (par. 16-91 *Alarm word 2*)
00000001	Service Trip, read / Write
00000002	Reserved
00000004	Service Trip, Typecode / Spare part
00000008	Reserved
00000010	Reserved
00000020	No Flow
00000040	Dry Pump
00000080	End of Curve
00000100	Broken Belt
00000200	Not used
00000400	Not used
00000800	Reserved
00001000	Reserved
00002000	Reserved
00004000	Reserved
00008000	Reserved
00010000	Reserved
00020000	Not used
00040000	Fans error
00080000	ECB error
00100000	Reserved
00200000	Reserved
00400000	Reserved
00800000	Reserved
01000000	Reserved
02000000	Reserved
04000000	Reserved
08000000	Reserved
10000000	Reserved
20000000	Reserved
40000000	Reserved
80000000	Reserved

8.7.3 Warning Words

Warning word , par. 16-92 *Warning Word*

Bit (Hex)	Warning Word (par. 16-92 *Warning Word*)
00000001	Brake check
00000002	Power card overtemperature
00000004	Ground fault
00000008	Ctrl. card overtemperature
00000010	Control word timeout
00000020	Overcurrent
00000040	Torque limit
00000080	Motor thermistor overtemp.
00000100	Motor ETR overtemperature
00000200	Inverter overloaded
00000400	DC link undervoltage
00000800	DC link overvoltage
00001000	DC link voltage low
00002000	DC link voltage high
00004000	Line phase loss
00008000	No motor
00010000	Live zero error
00020000	10 V low
00040000	Brake resistor power limit
00080000	Brake resistor short circuit
00100000	Brake chopper fault
00200000	Speed limit
00400000	Serial Communication Bus comm. fault
00800000	24 V supply fault
01000000	Line failure
02000000	Current limit
04000000	Low temperature
08000000	Voltage limit
10000000	Encoder loss
20000000	Output frequency limit
40000000	Not used
80000000	Not used

Warning word 2, par. 16-93 *Warning word 2*

Bit (Hex)	Warning Word 2 (par. 16-93 *Warning word 2*)
00000001	Start Delayed
00000002	Stop Delayed
00000004	Clock Failure
00000008	Reserved
00000010	Reserved
00000020	No Flow
00000040	Dry Pump
00000080	End of Curve
00000100	Broken Belt
00000200	Not used
00000400	Reserved
00000800	Reserved
00001000	Reserved
00002000	Reserved
00004000	Reserved
00008000	Reserved
00010000	Reserved
00020000	Not used
00040000	Fans warning
00080000	ECB warning
00100000	Reserved
00200000	Reserved
00400000	Reserved
00800000	Reserved
01000000	Reserved
02000000	Reserved
04000000	Reserved
08000000	Reserved
10000000	Reserved
20000000	Reserved
40000000	Reserved
80000000	Reserved

8.7.4 Extended Status Words

Extended status word, par. 16-94 *Ext. Status Word*

Bit (Hex)	Extended Status Word (par. 16-94 *Ext. Status Word*)
00000001	Ramping
00000002	AMA tuning
00000004	Start CW/CCW
00000008	Not used
00000010	Not used
00000020	Feedback high
00000040	Feedback low
00000080	Output current high
00000100	Output current low
00000200	Output frequency high
00000400	Output frequency low
00000800	Brake check OK
00001000	Braking max
00002000	Braking
00004000	Out of speed range
00008000	OVC active
00010000	AC brake
00020000	Password Timelock
00040000	Password Protection
00080000	Reference high
00100000	Reference low
00200000	Local Ref./Remote Ref.
00400000	Reserved
00800000	Reserved
01000000	Reserved
02000000	Reserved
04000000	Reserved
08000000	Reserved
10000000	Reserved
20000000	Reserved
40000000	Reserved
80000000	Reserved

Extended status word 2, par. 16-95 *Ext. Status Word 2*

Bit (Hex)	Extended Status Word 2 (par. 16-95 *Ext. Status Word 2*)
00000001	Off
00000002	Hand / Auto
00000004	Not used
00000008	Not used
00000010	Not used
00000020	Relay 123 active
00000040	Start Prevented
00000080	Control ready
00000100	Drive ready
00000200	Quick Stop
00000400	DC Brake
00000800	Stop
00001000	Standby
00002000	Freeze Output Request
00004000	Freeze Output
00008000	Jog Request
00010000	Jog
00020000	Start Request
00040000	Start
00080000	Start Applied
00100000	Start Delay
00200000	Sleep
00400000	Sleep Boost
00800000	Running
01000000	Bypass
02000000	Fire Mode
04000000	Reserved
08000000	Reserved
10000000	Reserved
20000000	Reserved
40000000	Reserved
80000000	Reserved

8.7.5 Fault Messages

WARNING 1, 10 volts low
The control card voltage is below 10 V from terminal 50.
Remove some of the load from terminal 50, as the 10 V supply is overloaded. Max. 15 mA or minimum 590 Ω.

This condition can be caused by a short in a connected potentiometer or improper wiring of the potentiometer.

Troubleshooting: Remove the wiring from terminal 50. If the warning clears, the problem is with the customer wiring. If the warning does not clear, replace the control card.

WARNING/ALARM 2, Live zero error
This warning or alarm will only appear if programmed by the user in par. 6-01 *Live Zero Timeout Function*. The signal on one of the analog inputs is less than 50% of the minimum value programmed for that input. This condition can be caused by broken wiring or faulty device sending the signal.

Troubleshooting:

Check connections on all the analog input terminals. Control card terminals 53 and 54 for signals, terminal 55 common. MCB 101OPCGPIO terminals 11 and 12 for signals, terminal 10 common. MCB 109OPCAIO terminals 1, 3, 5 for signals, terminals 2, 4, 6 common).

Make sure that the drive programming and switch settings match the analog signal type.

Perform Input Terminal Signal Test.

WARNING/ALARM 3, No motor
No motor has been connected to the output of the adjustable frequency drive. This warning or alarm will only appear if programmed by the user in par. 1-80 *Function at Stop*.

Troubleshooting: Check the connection between the drive and the motor.

WARNING/ALARM 4, Mains phase loss
A phase is missing on the supply side, or the line voltage imbalance is too high. This message also appears for a fault in the input rectifier on the adjustable frequency drive. Options are programmed at par. 14-12 *Function at Mains Imbalance*.

Troubleshooting: Check the supply voltage and supply currents to the adjustable frequency drive.

WARNING 5, DC link voltage high
The intermediate circuit voltage (DC) is higher than the high voltage warning limit. The limit is dependent on the drive voltage rating. The adjustable frequency drive is still active.

WARNING 6, DC link voltage low
The intermediate circuit voltage (DC) is lower than the low voltage warning limit. The limit is dependent on the drive voltage rating. The adjustable frequency drive is still active.

WARNING/ALARM 7, DC overvoltage
If the intermediate circuit voltage exceeds the limit, the adjustable frequency drive trips after a time.

Troubleshooting:

Connect a brake resistor

Extend the ramp time

Change the ramp type

Activate functions in par. 2-10 *Brake Function*

Increase par. 14-26 *Trip Delay at Inverter Fault*

WARNING/ALARM 8, DC undervoltage
If the intermediate circuit voltage (DC) drops below the undervoltage limit, the adjustable frequency drive checks if a 24 V backup supply is connected. If no 24 V backup supply is connected, the adjustable frequency drive trips after a fixed time delay. The time delay varies with unit size.

Troubleshooting:

Make sure that the supply voltage matches the adjustable frequency drive voltage.

Perform Input voltage test

Perform soft charge and rectifier circuit test

WARNING/ALARM 9, Inverter overloaded
The adjustable frequency drive is about to cut out because of an overload (too high current for too long). The counter for electronic, thermal inverter protection gives a warning at 98% and trips at 100%, while giving an alarm. The adjustable frequency drive *cannot* be reset until the counter is below 90%.
The fault is that the adjustable frequency drive is overloaded by more than 100% for too long.

Troubleshooting:

Come the output current shown on the LCP keypad with the drive rated current.

Come the output current shown on the LCP keypad with measured motor current.

Display the Thermal Drive Load on the keypad and monitor the value. When running above the drive continuous current rating, the counter should increase. When running below the drive continuous current rating, the counter should decrease.

Note See the derating section in the Design Guide for more details if a high switching frequency is required.

WARNING/ALARM 10, Motor overload temperature
According to the electronic thermal protection (ETR), the motor is too hot. Select whether the adjustable frequency drive gives a warning or an alarm when the counter reaches 100% in par. 1-90 *Motor Thermal Protection*. The fault is that the motor is overloaded by more than 100% for too long.

Troubleshooting:

Check if the motor is overheating.

If the motor is mechanically overloaded

That the motor par. 1-24 *Motor Current* is set correctly.

8

Motor data in parameters 1-20 through 1-25 are set correctly.

The setting in par. 1-91 *Motor External Fan*.

Run AMA in par. 1-29 *Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)*.

WARNING/ALARM 11, Motor thermistor overtemp

The thermistor or the thermistor connection is disconnected. Select whether the adjustable frequency drive gives a warning or an alarm when the counter reaches 100% in par. 1-90 *Motor Thermal Protection*.

Troubleshooting:

Check if the motor is overheating.

Check if the motor is mechanically overloaded.

Check that the thermistor is connected correctly between terminal 53 or 54 (analog voltage input) and terminal 50 (+10 V supply), or between terminal 18 or 19 (digital input PNP only) and terminal 50.

If a KTY sensor is used, check for correct connection between terminal 54 and 55.

If using a thermal switch or thermistor, check the programming of par. 1-93 *Thermistor Source* matches sensor wiring.

If using a KTY sensor, check the programming of parameters 1-95, 1-96, and 1-97 match sensor wiring.

8

WARNING/ALARM 12, Torque limit

The torque is higher than the value in par. 4-16 *Torque Limit Motor Mode* (in motor operation) or the torque is higher than the value in par. 4-17 *Torque Limit Generator Mode* (in regenerative operation). Par. 14-25 *Trip Delay at Torque Limit* can be used to change this from a warning only condition to a warning followed by an alarm.

WARNING/ALARM 13, Overcurrent

The inverter peak current limit (approx. 200% of the rated current) is exceeded. The warning lasts about 1.5 sec. Then the adjustable frequency drive trips and issues an alarm. If extended mechanical brake control is selected, trip can be reset externally.

Troubleshooting:

This fault may be caused by shock loading or fast acceleration with high inertia loads.

Turn off the adjustable frequency drive. Check if the motor shaft can be turned.

Make sure that the motor size matches the adjustable frequency drive.

Incorrect motor data in parameters 1-20 through 1-25.

ALARM 14, Earth (ground) fault

There is a discharge from the output phases to ground, either in the cable between the adjustable frequency drive and the motor or in the motor itself.

Troubleshooting:

Turn off the adjustable frequency drive and remove the ground fault.

Measure the resistance to ground of the motor leads and the motor with a megohmmeter to check for ground faults in the motor.

Perform current sensor test.

ALARM 15, Hardware mismatch

A fitted option is not operational with the present control board hardware or software.

Record the value of the following parameters and contact your Danfoss supplier:

Par. 15-40 *FC Type*

Par. 15-41 *Power Section*

Par. 15-42 *Voltage*

Par. 15-43 *Software Version*

Par. 15-45 *Actual Typecode String*

Par. 15-49 *SW ID Control Card*

Par. 15-50 *SW ID Power Card*

Par. 15-60 *Option Mounted*

Par. 15-61 *Option SW Version*

ALARM 16, Short circuit

There is short-circuiting in the motor or on the motor terminals.
Turn off the adjustable frequency drive and remove the short-circuit.

WARNING/ALARM 17, Control word timeout

There is no communication to the adjustable frequency drive.
The warning will only be active when par. 8-04 *Control Word Timeout Function* is NOT set to OFF.
If par. 8-04 *Control Word Timeout Function* is set to *Stop* and *Trip*, a warning appears and the adjustable frequency drive ramps down until it trips, while giving an alarm.

Troubleshooting:

Check connections on the serial communication cable.

Increase par. 8-03 *Control Word Timeout Time*

Check the operation of the communication equipment.

Verify proper installation based on EMC requirements.

WARNING 23, Internal fan fault

The fan warning function is an extra protection function that checks if the fan is running / mounted. The fan warning can be disabled in par. 14-53 *Fan Monitor* ([0] Disabled).

For the D, E, and F Frame drives, the regulated voltage to the fans is monitored.

Troubleshooting:

Check fan resistance.

Check soft charge fuses.

WARNING 24, External fan fault

The fan warning function is an extra protection function that checks if the fan is running / mounted. The fan warning can be disabled in par. 14-53 *Fan Monitor* ([0] Disabled).

For the D, E, and F Frame drives, the regulated voltage to the fans is monitored.

Troubleshooting:

Check fan resistance.

Check soft charge fuses.

WARNING 25, Brake resistor short circuit

The brake resistor is monitored during operation. If it short circuits, the brake function is disconnected and the warning appears. The adjustable frequency drive still works, but without the brake function. Turn off the adjustable frequency drive and replace the brake resistor (see par. 2-15 *Brake Check*).

WARNING/ALARM 26, Brake resistor power limit

The power transmitted to the brake resistor is calculated as follows: as a percentage, as a mean value over the last 120 seconds, on the basis of the resistance value of the brake resistor, and the intermediate circuit voltage. The warning is active when the dissipated braking energy is higher than 90%. If *Trip* [2] has been selected in par. 2-13 *Brake Power Monitoring*, the adjustable frequency drive cuts out and issues this alarm, when the dissipated braking energy is higher than 100%.

WARNING/ALARM 27, Brake chopper fault

The brake transistor is monitored during operation and if it short-circuits, the brake function disconnects and issues a warning. The adjustable frequency drive is still able to run, but since the brake transistor has short-circuited, substantial power is transmitted to the brake resistor, even if it is inactive.
Turn off the adjustable frequency drive and remove the brake resistor.
This alarm/ warning could also occur should the brake resistor overheat. Terminal 104 to 106 are available as brake resistor. Klixon inputs, see section Brake Resistor Temperature Switch.

WARNING/ALARM 28, Brake check failed

Brake resistor fault: the brake resistor is not connected or not working.
Check par. 2-15 *Brake Check*.

ALARM 29, Heatsink temp

The maximum temperature of the heatsink has been exceeded. The temperature fault will not be reset until the temperature falls below a defined heatsink temperature. The trip and reset point are different based on the drive power size.

Troubleshooting:

Ambient temperature too high.

Too long motor cable.

Incorrect clearance above and below the drive.

Dirty heatsink.

Blocked air flow around the drive.

Damaged heatsink fan.

For the D, E, and F Frame drives, this alarm is based on the temperature measured by the heatsink sensor mounted inside the IGBT modules. For the F Frame drives, this alarm can also be caused by the thermal sensor in the rectifier module.

Troubleshooting:

Check fan resistance.

Check soft charge fuses.

IGBT thermal sensor.

ALARM 30, Motor phase U missing

Motor phase U between the adjustable frequency drive and the motor is missing.
Turn off the adjustable frequency drive and check motor phase U.

ALARM 31, Motor phase V missing

Motor phase V between the adjustable frequency drive and the motor is missing.
Turn off the adjustable frequency drive and check motor phase V.

ALARM 32, Motor phase W missing

Motor phase W between the adjustable frequency drive and the motor is missing.
Turn off the adjustable frequency drive and check motor phase W.

ALARM 33, Inrush fault

Too many power-ups have occurred within a short time period. Let unit cool to operating temperature.

WARNING/ALARM 34, Fieldbus communication fault

The serial communication bus on the communication option card is not working.

WARNING/ALARM 35, Out of frequency ranges:

This warning is active if the output frequency has reached the high limit (set in par. 4-53) or low limit (set in par. 4-52). In *Process Control, Closed-loop* (. 1-00) this warning is displayed.

WARNING/ALARM 36, Mains failure

This warning/alarm is only active if the supply voltage to the adjustable frequency drive is lost and par. 14-10 *Line Failure* is NOT set to OFF. Check the fuses to the adjustable frequency drive

ALARM 38, Internal fault

It may be necessary to contact your Danfoss supplier. Some typical alarm messages:

0	Serial port cannot be initialized. Serious hardware failure
256-258	Power EEPROM data is defect or too old
512	Control board EEPROM data is defect or too old
513	Communication timeout reading EEPROM data
514	Communication timeout reading EEPROM data
515	Application Orientated Control cannot recognize the EEPROM data
516	Cannot write to the EEPROM because a write command is on progress
517	Write command is under timeout
518	Failure in the EEPROM
519	Missing or invalid Barcode data in EEPROM
783	Parameter value outside of min/max limits
1024-1279	A CAN message that has to be sent, couldn't be sent
1281	Digital Signal Processor flash timeout
1282	Power micro software version mismatch
1283	Power EEPROM data version mismatch
1284	Cannot read Digital Signal Processor software version
1299	Option SW in slot A is too old
1300	Option SW in slot B is too old
1301	Option SW in slot C0 is too old
1302	Option SW in slot C1 is too old
1315	Option SW in slot A is not supported (not allowed)
1316	Option SW in slot B is not supported (not allowed)
1317	Option SW in slot C0 is not supported (not allowed)
1318	Option SW in slot C1 is not supported (not allowed)
1379	Option A did not respond when calculating Platform Version.
1380	Option B did not respond when calculating Platform Version.
1381	Option C0 did not respond when calculating Platform Version.
1382	Option C1 did not respond when calculating Platform Version.
1536	An exception in the Application Orientated Control is registered. Debug information written in LCP
1792	DSP watchdog is active. Debugging of power part data motor orientated control data not transferred correctly
2049	Power data restarted
2064-2072	H081x: option in slot x has restarted
2080-2088	H082x: option in slot x has issued a power-up wait
2096-2104	H083x: option in slot x has issued a legal power-up wait
2304	Could not read any data from power EEPROM
2305	Missing SW version from power unit
2314	Missing power unit data from power unit
2315	Missing SW version from power unit
2316	Missing io_statepage from power unit
2324	Power card configuration is determined to be incorrect at power-up
2330	Power size information between the power cards does not match
2561	No communication from DSP to ATACD
2562	No communication from ATACD to DSP (state running)
2816	Stack overflow Control board module
2817	Scheduler slow tasks
2818	Fast tasks
2819	Parameter thread
2820	LCP Stack overflow
2821	Serial port overflow
2822	USB port overflow
2836	cfListMempool to small
3072-5122	Parameter value is outside its limits
5123	Option in slot A: Hardware incompatible with control board hardware
5124	Option in slot B: Hardware incompatible with control board hardware
5125	Option in slot C0: Hardware incompatible with control board hardware
5126	Option in slot C1: Hardware incompatible with control board hardware
5376-6231	Out of memory

ALARM 39, Heatsink sensor

No feedback from the heatsink temperature sensor.

The signal from the IGBT thermal sensor is not available on the power card. The problem could be on the power card, on the gate drive card, or the ribbon cable between the power card and gate drive card.

8

WARNING 40, Overload of Digital Output Terminal 27
Check the load connected to terminal 27 or remove short-circuit connection. Check par. 5-00 *Digital I/O Mode* and par. 5-01 *Terminal 27 Mode*.

WARNING 41, Overload of Digital Output Terminal 29
Check the load connected to terminal 29 or remove short-circuit connection. Check par. 5-00 *Digital I/O Mode* and par. 5-02 *Terminal 29 Mode*.

WARNING 42, Overload of Digital Output on X30/6 or Overload of Digital Output on X30/7
For X30/6, check the load connected to X30/6 or remove short-circuit connection. Check par. 5-32 *Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101)*.

For X30/7, check the load connected to X30/7 or remove short-circuit connection. Check par. 5-33 *Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101)*.

ALARM 46, Power card supply
The supply on the power card is out of range.

There are three power supplies generated by the switch mode power supply (SMPS) on the power card: 24 V, 5 V, +/-18 V. When powered with 24 VDC with the MCB 107 option, only the 24 V and 5 V supplies are monitored. When powered with three-phase AC line voltage, all three supplied are monitored.

WARNING 47, 24 V supply low
The 24 V DC is measured on the control card. The external V DC backup power supply may be overloaded, otherwise contact your Danfoss supplier.

WARNING 48, 1.8 V supply low
The 1.8 V DC supply used on the control card is outside of allowable limits. The power supply is measured on the control card.

WARNING 49, Speed limit
When the speed is not within the specified range in par. 4-11 and par. 4-13, the drive will show a warning. When the speed is below the specified limit in par. 1-86 *Trip Speed Low [RPM]* (except when starting or stopping), the drive will trip.

ALARM 50, AMA calibration failed
Contact your Danfoss supplier.

ALARM 51, AMA check Unom and Inom
The setting of motor voltage, motor current, and motor power is presumably wrong. Check the settings.

ALARM 52, AMA low Inom
The motor current is too low. Check the settings.

ALARM 53, AMA big motor
The motor is too big for the AMA to be carried out.

ALARM 54, AMA small motor
The motor is too big for the AMA to be carried out.

ALARM 55, AMA Parameter out of range
The parameter values found from the motor are outside acceptable range.

ALARM 56, AMA interrupted by user
The AMA has been interrupted by the user.

ALARM 57, AMA timeout
Try to start the AMA again a number of times, until the AMA is carried out. Please note that repeated runs may heat the motor to a level where the resistances Rs and Rr are increased. In most cases, however, this is not critical.

ALARM 58, AMA internal fault
Contact your Danfoss supplier.

WARNING 59, Current limit
The current is higher than the value in par. 4-18 *Current Limit*.

WARNING 60, External interlock
External interlock has been activated. To resume normal operation, apply 24 V DC to the terminal programmed for external interlock and reset the adjustable frequency drive (via serial communication, digital I/O, or by pressing reset button on keypad).

WARNING 61, Tracking error
An error has been detected between the calculated motor speed and the speed measurement from the feedback device. The function for warning/alarm/disable is set in 4-30, *Motor Feedback Loss Function*, error setting in 4-31, *Motor Feedback Speed Error*, and the allowed error time in 4-32, *Motor Feedback Loss Timeout*. During a commissioning procedure the function may be effective.

WARNING 62, Output frequency at maximum limit
The output frequency is higher than the value set in par. 4-19 *Max Output Frequency*

WARNING 64, Voltage limit
The load and speed combination demands a motor voltage higher than the actual DC link voltage.

WARNING/ALARM/TRIP 65, Control card overtemperature
Control card overtemperature: The cutout temperature of the control card is 176°F [80°C].

WARNING 66, Heatsink temperature low
This warning is based on the temperature sensor in the IGBT module.

Troubleshooting:

The heatsink temperature measured as 32°F [0°C] could indicate that the temperature sensor is defective causing the fan speed to increase to the maximum. If the sensor wire between the IGBT and the gate drive card is disconnected, this warning would result. Also, check the IGBT thermal sensor.

ALARM 67, Option module configuration has changed
One or more options have either been added or removed since the last power-down.

ALARM 68, Safe stop activated
Safe stop has been activated. To resume normal operation, apply 24 V DC to terminal 37, then send a reset signal (via Bus, Digital I/O, or by pressing the reset key. See par. .

ALARM 69, Power card temperature
The temperature sensor on the power card is either too hot or too cold.

8

Troubleshooting:

Check the operation of the door fans.

Make sure that the filters for the door fans are not blocked.

Make sure that the gland plate is properly installed on IP 21 and IP 54 (NEMA 1 and NEMA 12) drives.

ALARM 70, Illegal FC Configuration

Actual combination of control board and power board is illegal.

WARNING/ALARM 71, PTC 1 safe stop

Safe Stop has been activated from the MCB 112 PTC Thermistor Card (motor too warm). Normal operation can be resumed when the MCB 112 applies 24 V DC to T-37 again (when the motor temperature reaches an acceptable level) and when the digital input from the MCB 112 is deactivated. When that happens, a reset signal must be sent (via serial communication, digital I/O, or by pressing reset button on keypad). Note that if automatic restart is enabled, the motor may start when the fault is cleared.

ALARM 72, Dangerous failure

Safe stop with trip lock. Unexpected signal levels on safe stop and digital input from the MCB 112 PTC thermistor card.

Warning 76, Power Unit Setup

The required number of power units does not match the detected number of active power units.

Troubleshooting:

When replacing an F frame module, this will occur if the power specific data in the module power card does not match the rest of the drive. Please confirm the spare part and its power card are the correct part number.

WARNING 73, Safe stop auto restart

Safe stopped. Note that with automatic restart enabled, the motor may start when the fault is cleared.

WARNING 77, Reduced power mode:

This warning indicates that the drive is operating in reduced power mode (i.e., less than the allowed number of inverter sections). This warning will be generated on power cycle when the drive is set to run with fewer inverters and will remain on.

ALARM 79, Illegal power section configuration

The scaling card is the incorrect t number or not installed. Also MK102 connector on the power card could not be installed.

ALARM 80, Drive initialized to default value

Parameter settings are initialized to default settings after a manual reset.

ALARM 91, Analog input 54 wrong settings

Switch S202 has to be set in position OFF (voltage input) when a KTY sensor is connected to analog input terminal 54.

ALARM 92, No flow

A no-load situation has been detected in the system. See parameter group 22-2.

ALARM 93, Dry pump

A no-flow situation and high speed indicates that the pump has run dry. See parameter group 22-2.

ALARM 94, End of curve

Feedback stays lower than the setpoint which may indicate leakage in the pipe system. See parameter group 22-5.

ALARM 95, Broken belt

Torque is below the torque level set for no load, indicating a broken belt. See parameter group 22-6.

ALARM 96, Start delayed

Motor start has been delayed due to short-cycle protection active. See parameter group 22-7.

WARNING 97, Stop delayed

Stopping the motor has been delayed due to short cycle protection is active. See parameter group 22-7.

WARNING 98, Clock fault

Clock Fault. Time is not set or RTC clock (if mounted) has failed. See parameter group 0-7.

WARNING 201, Fire Mode was Active

Fire mode has been active.

WARNING 202, Fire Mode Limits Exceeded

Fire mode has suppressed one or more warranty voiding alarms.

WARNING 203, Missing Motor

A multi-motor underload situation was detected, this could be due to, for example, a missing motor.

WARNING 204, Locked Rotor

A multi-motor overload situation was detected, which could be due to, e.g., a locked rotor.

ALARM 243, Brake IGBT

This alarm is only for F Frame drives. It is equivalent to Alarm 27. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

1 = left most inverter module.

2 = middle inverter module in F2 or F4 drive.

2 = right inverter module in F1 or F3 drive.

3 = right inverter module in F2 or F4 drive.

5 = rectifier module.

ALARM 244, Heatsink temperature

This alarm is only for F Frame drives. It is equivalent to Alarm 29. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

1 = left most inverter module.

2 = middle inverter module in F2 or F4 drive.

2 = right inverter module in F1 or F3 drive.

3 = right inverter module in F2 or F4 drive.

5 = rectifier module.

ALARM 245, Heatsink sensor

This alarm is only for F Frame drives. It is equivalent to Alarm 39. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

1 = left most inverter module.

2 = middle inverter module in F2 or F4 drive.

2 = right inverter module in F1 or F3 drive.

3 = right inverter module in F2 or F4 drive.

5 = rectifier module.

ALARM 246, Power card supply

This alarm is only for F Frame drives. It is equivalent to Alarm 46. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

1 = left most inverter module.

2 = middle inverter module in F2 or F4 drive.

2 = right inverter module in F1 or F3 drive.

3 = right inverter module in F2 or F4 drive.

5 = rectifier module.

ALARM 247, Power card temperature

This alarm is only for F Frame drives. It is equivalent to Alarm 69. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

1 = left most inverter module.

2 = middle inverter module in F2 or F4 drive.

2 = right inverter module in F1 or F3 drive.

3 = right inverter module in F2 or F4 drive.

5 = rectifier module.

ALARM 248, Illegal power section configuration

This alarm is only for F Frame drives. It is equivalent to Alarm 79. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

1 = left most inverter module.

2 = middle inverter module in F2 or F4 drive.

2 = right inverter module in F1 or F3 drive.

3 = right inverter module in F2 or F4 drive.

5 = rectifier module.

ALARM 250, New spare part

The power or switch mode power supply has been exchanged. The adjustable frequency drive type code must be restored in the EEPROM. Select the correct type code in par. 14-23 *Typecode Setting* according to the label on the unit. Remember to select 'Save to EEPROM' to complete.

ALARM 251, New type code

The adjustable frequency drive has a new type code.

8

Index

C

D

I

J

K

L

M

R

S

T

U

V

W